



Getting Started Guide for Cisco UCS E-Series Servers and the Cisco UCS E-Series Network Compute Engine

First Published: 2019-10-04

Americas Headquarters

Cisco Systems, Inc.
170 West Tasman Drive
San Jose, CA 95134-1706
USA
<http://www.cisco.com>
Tel: 408 526-4000
800 553-NETS (6387)
Fax: 408 527-0883

THE SPECIFICATIONS AND INFORMATION REGARDING THE PRODUCTS IN THIS MANUAL ARE SUBJECT TO CHANGE WITHOUT NOTICE. ALL STATEMENTS, INFORMATION, AND RECOMMENDATIONS IN THIS MANUAL ARE BELIEVED TO BE ACCURATE BUT ARE PRESENTED WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED. USERS MUST TAKE FULL RESPONSIBILITY FOR THEIR APPLICATION OF ANY PRODUCTS.

THE SOFTWARE LICENSE AND LIMITED WARRANTY FOR THE ACCOMPANYING PRODUCT ARE SET FORTH IN THE INFORMATION PACKET THAT SHIPPED WITH THE PRODUCT AND ARE INCORPORATED HEREIN BY THIS REFERENCE. IF YOU ARE UNABLE TO LOCATE THE SOFTWARE LICENSE OR LIMITED WARRANTY, CONTACT YOUR CISCO REPRESENTATIVE FOR A COPY.

The Cisco implementation of TCP header compression is an adaptation of a program developed by the University of California, Berkeley (UCB) as part of UCB's public domain version of the UNIX operating system. All rights reserved. Copyright © 1981, Regents of the University of California.

NOTWITHSTANDING ANY OTHER WARRANTY HEREIN, ALL DOCUMENT FILES AND SOFTWARE OF THESE SUPPLIERS ARE PROVIDED "AS IS" WITH ALL FAULTS. CISCO AND THE ABOVE-NAMED SUPPLIERS DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES, EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, THOSE OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OR ARISING FROM A COURSE OF DEALING, USAGE, OR TRADE PRACTICE.

IN NO EVENT SHALL CISCO OR ITS SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, LOST PROFITS OR LOSS OR DAMAGE TO DATA ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THIS MANUAL, EVEN IF CISCO OR ITS SUPPLIERS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

Any Internet Protocol (IP) addresses and phone numbers used in this document are not intended to be actual addresses and phone numbers. Any examples, command display output, network topology diagrams, and other figures included in the document are shown for illustrative purposes only. Any use of actual IP addresses or phone numbers in illustrative content is unintentional and coincidental.

All printed copies and duplicate soft copies of this document are considered uncontrolled. See the current online version for the latest version.

Cisco has more than 200 offices worldwide. Addresses and phone numbers are listed on the Cisco website at www.cisco.com/go/offices.

Cisco and the Cisco logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Cisco and/or its affiliates in the U.S. and other countries. To view a list of Cisco trademarks, go to this URL: <https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/about/legal/trademarks.html>. Third-party trademarks mentioned are the property of their respective owners. The use of the word partner does not imply a partnership relationship between Cisco and any other company. (1721R)

© 2016–2024 Cisco Systems, Inc. All rights reserved.



CONTENTS

PREFACE

Preface	ix
New and Changed Information	ix
Audience	ix
Organization	ix
Conventions	xi
Related Documentation	xii
Documentation Feedback	xii

CHAPTER 1

Quick Start Basic Configuration	1
Quick Start Basic Configuration Tasks	1

CHAPTER 2

Overview	5
Cisco UCS E-Series Servers and the Cisco UCS E-Series Network Compute Engine Overview	5
Server Software	5
Managing E-Series Servers and the NCE	6
E-Series Server and NCE Options	7
Basic Workflow for Option 1—E-Series Server or NCE Without a Preinstalled Operating System or Hypervisor	7
Basic Workflow for Option 2—E-Series Server or NCE With a Preinstalled Microsoft Windows Server	9
Basic Workflow for Option 3—E-Series Server or NCE With a Preinstalled VMware vSphere Hypervisor	10
Common Terms Used in This Guide	11

CHAPTER 3

Installing the E-Series Server or NCE into the Router	13
Basic Workflow for Installing the E-Series Server or NCE into the Router	13
Verifying Compatibility	14

- Verifying the Cisco ISR G2, E-Series Server, NCE, and Cisco IOS Software Release Compatibility 14
- Verifying the Cisco ISR 4000 Series, E-Series Server, NIM, CIMC, and Cisco IOS Software Release Compatibility 15
- Installing the E-Series Server and the NCE into a Router 15
- Verifying Installation 18
 - Verifying E-Series Server Installation 18
 - Verifying the EHWIC E-Series NCE Installation 19
 - Verifying NIM E-Series NCE Installation 20
- Stopping the E-Series Server from Resetting and Updating the CIMC Firmware—Cisco ISR 4000 Series 21
- What to Do Next 22

CHAPTER 4

Configuring Access to the Management Firmware 23

- Configuring CIMC Access 23
 - Understanding the Interfaces in an E-Series Server and the Cisco ISR G2 23
 - CIMC Access Configuration Options—Cisco ISR G2 25
 - Understanding the Interfaces in an E-Series Server and the Cisco ISR 4000 Series 36
 - CIMC Access Configuration Options—Cisco ISR 4000 Series 38
 - Understanding the Interfaces in the EHWIC E-Series NCE and the Cisco ISR G2 50
 - CIMC Access Configuration Options—EHWIC E-Series NCE 51
 - Understanding the Interfaces in the NIM E-Series NCE and the Cisco ISR 4000 Series 59
 - CIMC Access Configuration Options—NIM E-Series NCE 60
- Configuring CIMC Access Using the CIMC Configuration Utility 70
- Defining Network Static Settings Using a Script File 72
- What to Do Next 73

CHAPTER 5

Accessing the Management Firmware 75

- CIMC Overview 75
 - CIMC GUI 76
 - CIMC CLI 76
- Logging In to the CIMC GUI 76
- CIMC Home Page 78
- What to Do Next 78

CHAPTER 6	Managing Storage Using RAID	79
	RAID Options	79
	Configuring RAID	82
	Configuring RAID Using the CIMC GUI	83
	Configuring RAID	86
	Configuring RAID Using the WebBIOS	89
	Configuring RAID Using the MegaRAID Controller	89
	Configuring RAID Using the Cisco IOS CLI	90
	What to Do Next	91
CHAPTER 7	Installing the Operating System or Hypervisor	93
	Operating System or Hypervisor Installation Methods	93
	KVM Console	94
	Installing an Operating System or Hypervisor Using the KVM Console	94
	PXE Installation Servers	96
	Installing an Operating System or Hypervisor Using a PXE Installation Server	96
	Host Image Mapping	97
	Mapping the Host Image	97
	Installing Drivers for the Microsoft Windows Server	99
	Obtaining Software from Cisco Systems	100
	Unmapping the Host Image	101
	Basic Workflow for Downloading and Installing the VMware vSphere Hypervisor	102
	Downloading the Customized VMware vSphere Hypervisor Image	103
	Assigning a Static IP Address to the VMware vSphere Hypervisor	103
	Downloading and Installing the vSphere Client	105
	Downloading and Installing the Operating System Using the Cisco IOS CLI	105
	Configuring the Server Boot Order	106
	Configuring the Server Boot Order Using the CIMC GUI	106
	Configuring the Server Boot Order Using the CIMC GUI	108
	Configuring the Boot Order Using the BIOS Setup Menu	111
	Configuring the Server Boot Order Using the Cisco IOS CLI	112
	Verifying Operating System and Hypervisor Installation	113
	Accessing the Microsoft Windows Server from CIMC	113

Accessing the VMware vSphere Hypervisor from CIMC	113
What to Do Next	114

CHAPTER 8

Configuring a Connection Between the Router and the E-Series Server or NCE	115
Configuring an Internal Connection Between the Cisco ISR G2 and the E-Series Server	115
Configuring an Internal Connection Between the Cisco ISR 4000 Series and the E-Series Server	118
Creating an Ethernet Virtual Circuit Between the E-Series Server and the Cisco ISR 4000 Series Using the Native VLAN	120
Creating an Ethernet Virtual Circuit Between the E-Series Server and the Cisco ISR 4000 Series Using a Non-Native VLAN	122
Configuring an Internal Connection Between the Cisco ISR G2 and the EHWIC E-Series NCE	124
Configuring an Internal Connection Between the Cisco ISR 4000 Series and the NIM E-Series NCE	127
Creating an Ethernet Virtual Circuit Between the NIM E-Series NCE and the Cisco ISR 4000 Series Using the Native VLAN	130
Creating an Ethernet Virtual Circuit Between the NIM E-Series NCE and the Cisco ISR 4000 Series Using a Non-Native VLAN	131
Understanding Network Interface Mapping	134
Determining the MAC Address in Microsoft Windows, Linux, and VMware vSphere Hypervisor	136

CHAPTER 9

Upgrading Firmware	139
Options for Upgrading Firmware	139
Cisco Host Upgrade Utility Overview	139
Minimum CIMC and BIOS Firmware Releases Required to Use HUU	140
CIMC and BIOS Firmware Releases Available With HUU ISO Images	141
Understanding the HUU User Interface	144
Upgrading the Firmware	145
Basic Workflow for Using the HUU	145
Upgrading the Firmware Using the HUU	146
Troubleshooting	148
BIOS Overview	149
Determining the Current BIOS Version	149
Obtaining Software from Cisco Systems	149
Upgrading Firmware Manually	151
Installing the BIOS Firmware Through the Browser	151

Installing the BIOS Firmware from a TFTP Server	152
Accessing the BIOS Setup Menu	152
Accessing the BIOS Setup Menu from the KVM Console	153
Changing Configuration Using the BIOS Setup Menu	155

APPENDIX A
Configuration Differences 157

Router Configuration Differences Between the Cisco SRE-V and the E-Series Server—Cisco ISR G2	157
Router Configuration Differences Between the Cisco ISR G2 and the Cisco ISR 4000 Series	158
Router Configuration Differences Between the E-Series Server and the EHWIC E-Series NCE—Cisco ISR G2	159
Router Configuration Differences Between the E-Series Server and the NIM E-Series NCE—Cisco ISR 4000 Series	160
VMware vSphere Hypervisor Configuration Differences	161

APPENDIX B
Cisco IOS Software Command Reference—Cisco ISR G2 163

imc ip address default-gateway	164
imc ip address dhcp	164
imc vlan	165
ucse cmos-reset	165
ucse password-reset	166
ucse session	168
ucse shutdown	169
ucse statistics	170
ucse status	171
ucse stop	173
Installation Commands	174
Password Reset Command	175
Session Command	175
IP Address Configuration Commands	175
CIMC Access Commands	175
VLAN Command	175
Reload, Reset, Start, Stop, Shutdown Commands	176
RAID Commands	176
Statistics and Status Commands	177

Boot Commands 177
Erase Hard Drive Commands 177

APPENDIX C**Cisco IOS Software Command Reference—Cisco ISR 4000 Series 179**

debug platform software ucse 179
hw-module subslot session 180
imc ip dhcp 181
platform switchport 182
show interfaces ucse 183
ucse subslot imc password-reset 185
ucse subslot server 186
ucse subslot server password-reset 187
ucse subslot shutdown 188
ucse subslot statistics 189
ucse subslot status 190
Commands Modified to Support Cisco ISR 4451-X 192
 imc access-port 192
 switchport 194
 switchport access vlan 199
 switchport mode 200
 switchport trunk 204



Preface

This preface includes the following sections:

- [New and Changed Information, on page ix](#)
- [Audience, on page ix](#)
- [Organization, on page ix](#)
- [Conventions, on page xi](#)
- [Related Documentation, on page xii](#)
- [Documentation Feedback, on page xii](#)

New and Changed Information

The following table provides an overview of the significant changes to this guide for the current CIMC release:

Audience

This guide is intended primarily for data center administrators with responsibilities and expertise in one or more of the following:

- Server administration
- Storage administration
- Network administration
- Network security

Organization

Chapter	Title	Description
Chapter 1	Quick Start Basic Configuration	Provides a list of commands and steps to quickly set up and use the E-Series Server and NCE.

Chapter	Title	Description
Chapter 2	Overview	Provides an overview of the product, hardware and software requirements, and E-Series Server and NCE options.
Chapter 3	Installing the E-Series Server or NCE into the Router	Describes how to install the E-Series Server or NCE into the router.
Chapter 4	Configuring Access to the Management Firmware	Provides options to configure CIMC access.
Chapter 5	Accessing the Management Firmware	Provides an overview of CIMC and describes how to log in to CIMC.
Chapter 6	Managing Storage Using RAID	Describes RAID options and how to configure RAID. Note The RAID feature is applicable to E-Series Servers and the SM E-Series NCE. The RAID feature is not applicable to the EHWIC E-Series NCE and the NIM E-Series NCE.
Chapter 7	Installing the Operating System	Describes how to install the operating system.
Chapter 8	Configuring a Connection Between the Router and the E-Series Server or NCE	Describes how to configure a connection between the router and the E-Series Server or NCE.
Chapter 9	Upgrading Firmware	Provides options for upgrading firmware.
Appendix A	Configuration Differences	
Appendix B	Cisco IOS Software Command Reference—Cisco ISR G2	Provides a list of Cisco IOS commands used to configure the Cisco ISR G2 and the E-Series Server or NCE.
Appendix C	Cisco IOS Software Command Reference—Cisco ISR 4000 series	Provides a list of Cisco IOS commands used to configure the Cisco ISR 4000 series and the E-Series Server.

Conventions

Text Type	Indication
GUI elements	GUI elements such as tab titles, area names, and field labels appear in this font . Main titles such as window, dialog box, and wizard titles appear in this font .
User input	Text the user should enter exactly as shown or keys that a user should press appear in this font .
Document titles	Document titles appear in <i>this font</i> .
System output	Terminal sessions and information that the system displays appear in <i>this font</i> .
CLI commands	CLI command keywords appear in this font . Arguments in a CLI command appear in <i>this font</i> .
[]	Elements in square brackets are optional.
{x y z}	Required alternative keywords are grouped in braces and separated by vertical bars.
[x y z]	Optional alternative keywords are grouped in brackets and separated by vertical bars.
string	A nonquoted set of characters. Do not use quotation marks around the string or the string will include the quotation marks.
< >	Nonprinting characters such as passwords are in angle brackets.
[]	Default responses to system prompts are in square brackets.
!, #	An exclamation point (!) or a pound sign (#) at the beginning of a line of code indicates a comment line.



Note Means *reader take note*. Notes contain helpful suggestions or references to material not covered in the document.



Tip Means *the following information will help you solve a problem*. The tips information might not be troubleshooting or even an action, but could be useful information, similar to a Timesaver.



Caution Means *reader be careful*. In this situation, you might perform an action that could result in equipment damage or loss of data.

**Timesaver**

Means *the described action saves time*. You can save time by performing the action described in the paragraph.

**Warning****IMPORTANT SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS**

This warning symbol means danger. You are in a situation that could cause bodily injury. Before you work on any equipment, be aware of the hazards involved with electrical circuitry and be familiar with standard practices for preventing accidents. Use the statement number provided at the end of each warning to locate its translation in the translated safety warnings that accompanied this device.

SAVE THESE INSTRUCTIONS

Related Documentation

The [Documentation Guide for Cisco UCS E-Series Servers and the Cisco UCS E-Series Network Compute Engine](#) provides links to all product documentation.

Documentation Feedback

To provide technical feedback on this document, or to report an error or omission, send an email to ucse_docfeedback@cisco.com. We appreciate your feedback.



CHAPTER 1

Quick Start Basic Configuration



Note

- Use this "Quick Start Basic Configuration" chapter if you just need a list of commands and steps to quickly set up and use the Cisco UCS E-Series Server (E-Series Server) or the Cisco UCS E-Series Network Compute Engine (NCE).
- For detailed instructions, use subsequent chapters.

Use this quick start basic configuration chapter if you purchased Option 1 (E-Series Server or NCE without a preinstalled operating system or hypervisor). Some of the configuration steps are different if you purchased Option 2 (E-Series Server or NCE with a preinstalled Microsoft Windows Server), or Option 3 (E-Series Server or NCE with a preinstalled VMware vSphere Hypervisor).

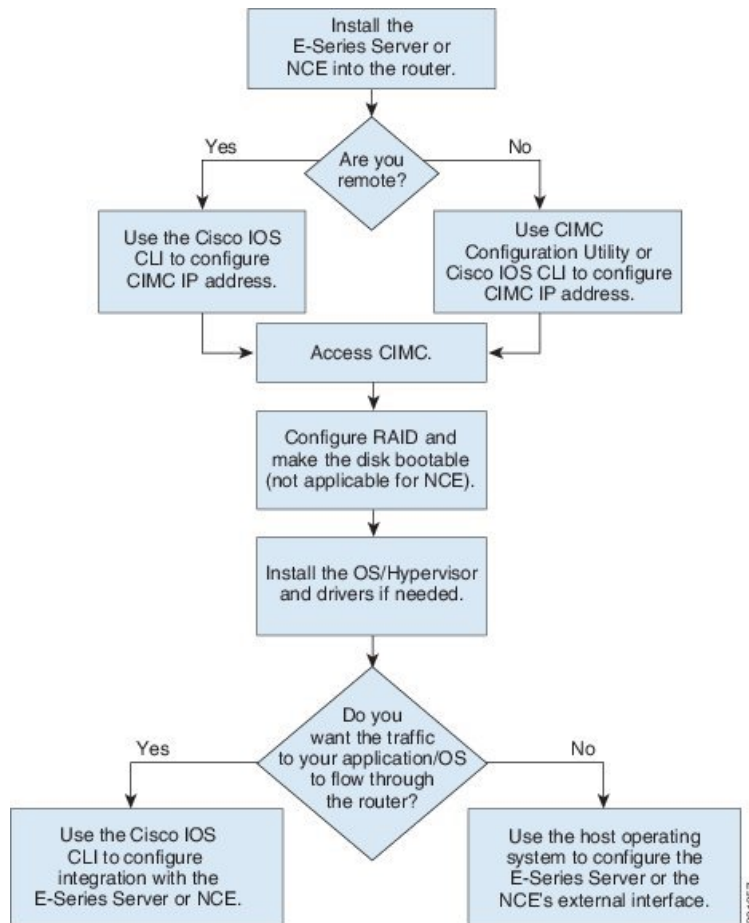
This chapter includes the following sections:

- [Quick Start Basic Configuration Tasks, on page 1](#)

Quick Start Basic Configuration Tasks

The following figure shows the basic workflow for Option 1—E-Series Server or NCE without a preinstalled operating system or hypervisor.

Figure 1: Basic Workflow—Option 1



Note The CIMC Configuration Utility is not applicable to the EHWIC E-Series NCE and the NIM E-Series NCE.



Note The RAID feature is applicable to E-Series Servers and the SM E-Series NCE. The RAID feature is not applicable to the EHWIC E-Series NCE and the NIM E-Series NCE.

Procedure

Step 1 Install the E-Series Server or NCE into the router.

Step 2 Configure the CIMC IP address for CIMC access. Use one of the following methods:

- If you are a remote user, use the Cisco IOS CLI to configure CIMC access. This basic configuration shows you how to configure CIMC access using the server's external GE2 interface:

a. **enable**

b. configure terminal

c. Use one of the following as appropriate:

- **interface ucse slot/port**—Use for all E-Series Servers or SM E-Series NCE installed in a Cisco ISR G2 or Cisco ISR 4000 series.
- **interface ucse 0/subslot/port**—Use for an EHWIC E-Series NCE installed in a Cisco ISR G2.
- **interface ucse slot/subslot/port**—Use for a NIM E-Series NCE installed in a Cisco ISR 4000 series.
- **ucse subslot slot/subslot**—Use for all E-Series Servers and NCEs installed in a Cisco ISR G2 or Cisco ISR 4000 series.

d. **imc ip address** *cimc-ip-address subnet-mask* **default-gateway** *cimc-gateway-ip-address*

e. **imc access-port shared-lom ge2**

f. **no shut**—Not applicable for an E-Series Server installed in a Cisco ISR 4000 series.

g. **end**

Note For detail configuration, see one of the following topics as appropriate:

- [Configuring CIMC Access Using the E-Series Server's External GE2 or GE3 Interface—Cisco ISR G2, on page 35](#)
- [Configuring CIMC Access Using the E-Series Server's External GE2 or GE3 Interface—Cisco ISR 4000 Series, on page 48](#)
- [Configuring CIMC Access Using the EHWIC E-Series NCE's External GE2 Interface, on page 57](#)
- [Configuring CIMC Access Using the NIM E-Series NCE's External GE2 Interface—Cisco ISR 4000 Series, on page 68](#)

To use another interface, see [Configuring Access to the Management Firmware](#) , on page 23.

• If you are a local user, use one of the following methods:

- Connect a keyboard and monitor to the front panel of the E-Series Server, and then use the CIMC Configuration Utility to configure CIMC access. See [Configuring CIMC Access Using the CIMC Configuration Utility, on page 70](#).

Note The CIMC Configuration Utility is not applicable to the EHWIC E-Series NCE and the NIM E-Series NCE.

- Use the Cisco IOS CLI to configure CIMC access (see the configuration for a remote user above).

Step 3 In your web browser, enter the IP address that you configured in Step 2 to access CIMC.

Step 4 Configure RAID and make the disk drive bootable. See [Managing Storage Using RAID](#) , on page 79.

Step 5 Install the operating system or hypervisor and if needed, install drivers. See [Installing the Operating System or Hypervisor, on page 93](#).

Step 6 Do one of the following:

- If you do not want the traffic to your application or operating system to flow through the router, use the server's host operating system to configure the E-Series Server's external GE2 or GE3 interface or the NCE's external GE2 interface.
 - If you want the traffic to your application or operating system to flow through the router, use the Cisco IOS CLI to configure an internal connection between the router and the E-Series Server or NCE. See [Configuring a Connection Between the Router and the E-Series Server or NCE](#), on page 115.
-



CHAPTER 2

Overview

This chapter includes the following sections:

- [Cisco UCS E-Series Servers and the Cisco UCS E-Series Network Compute Engine Overview, on page 5](#)
- [Server Software, on page 5](#)
- [Managing E-Series Servers and the NCE, on page 6](#)
- [E-Series Server and NCE Options, on page 7](#)
- [Common Terms Used in This Guide, on page 11](#)

Cisco UCS E-Series Servers and the Cisco UCS E-Series Network Compute Engine Overview

The Cisco UCS E-Series M6 Servers are size-, weight-, and power-efficient blade servers that are housed within the Cisco Catalyst 8300 Series Edge platforms. These servers provide a general-purpose compute platform for branch-office applications deployed either as bare-metal on operating systems, such as Linux, or as virtual machines on hypervisors, such as VMware vSphere Hypervisor.

The UCS E-Series M6 Server is purpose-built with powerful Intel IceLake-D processors for general purpose compute. It comes in the double-wide form factor, that fits into two SM slots.



Note For information about the E-Series M6 Servers, and the maximum number of servers that can be installed per router, see the "Hardware Requirements" section in the *Hardware Installation Guide for Cisco UCS E-Series M6 Servers*.

Server Software

The UCS E-Series M6 Servers require three major software systems:

- CIMC firmware
- BIOS firmware
- Operating system or hypervisor

CIMC Firmware

Cisco Integrated Management Controller (CIMC) is a separate management module built into the motherboard of the E-Series M6 Servers. A dedicated processor, separate from the main server CPU, runs the CIMC firmware. The system ships with a running version of the CIMC firmware. You can update the CIMC firmware, but no initial installation is needed.

CIMC is the management service for the E-Series M6 Servers. You can use a web-based GUI or SSH-based CLI to access, configure, administer, and monitor the server.

BIOS Firmware

BIOS initializes the hardware in the system, discovers bootable devices, and boots them in the provided sequence. It boots the operating system and configures the hardware for the operating system to use. BIOS manageability features allow you to interact with the hardware and use it. In addition, BIOS provides options to configure the system, and manage firmware.

The system ships with a running version of the BIOS firmware. You can update the BIOS firmware, but no initial installation is required.

Operating System or Hypervisor

The main server CPU runs on an operating system, such as Linux; or on a hypervisor. You can purchase an E-Series M6 Servers with a preinstalled hypervisor.



Note For information about the platforms that are available on the E-Series M6 Servers, see the "Software Requirements" section in the *Release Notes for Cisco UCS E-Series M6 Servers*.

Managing E-Series Servers and the NCE

The following table lists the management interfaces used by the E-Series Server and the NCE.

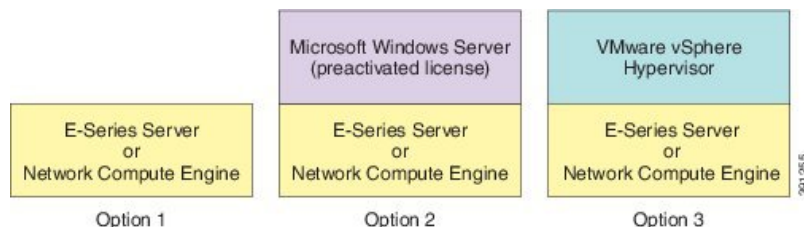
Table 1: E-Series Server and NCE Management Interfaces

Management Interface	Description
Cisco IOS CLI	CLI used to configure the host router and the E-Series Server or the NCE.
CIMC GUI	Web-based GUI used to access, configure, administer, and monitor the E-Series Server and NCE.
CIMC CLI	SSH-based CLI used to access, configure, administer, and monitor the E-Series Server and the NCE.
SNMP	Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) traps that allow you to view server configuration and status, and send fault and alert information.

E-Series Server and NCE Options

The following figure shows the E-Series Server and NCE options.

Figure 2: E-Series Server or NCE Options



- Option 1—E-Series Server or NCE without a preinstalled operating system or hypervisor
- Option 2—E-Series Server or NCE with a preinstalled Microsoft Windows Server

At the time of purchase, you can choose the appropriate RAID option that you want enabled on the E-Series Server.



Note If you purchase this option, the Microsoft Windows Server license is preactivated.

- Option 3—E-Series Server or NCE with a preinstalled VMware vSphere Hypervisor

At the time of purchase, you can choose the appropriate RAID option that you want enabled on the E-Series Server.



Note The default username for the preinstalled VMware vSphere Hypervisor is **root**, which cannot be changed, and the default password is **password**. After you log in, we recommend that you change the password.

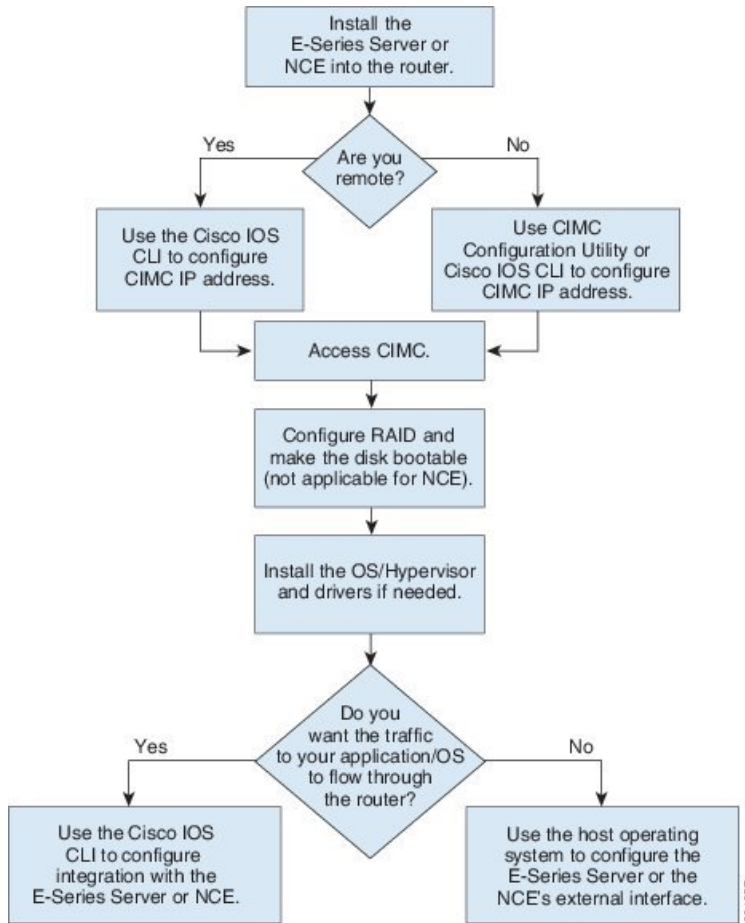


Important The RAID feature is applicable to E-Series Servers and the SM E-Series NCE. The RAID feature is not applicable to the EHWIC E-Series NCE and the NIM E-Series NCE.

Basic Workflow for Option 1—E-Series Server or NCE Without a Preinstalled Operating System or Hypervisor

The following figure shows the basic workflow for Option 1—E-Series Server or NCE without a preinstalled operating system or hypervisor.

Figure 3: Basic Workflow—Option 1



Note The CIMC Configuration Utility is not applicable to the EHWIC E-Series NCE and the NIM E-Series NCE.



Note The RAID feature is applicable to E-Series Servers and the SM E-Series NCE. The RAID feature is not applicable to the EHWIC E-Series NCE and the NIM E-Series NCE.

The following procedure provides the references for the tasks that you must perform when you purchase Option 1—hardware only (E-Series Server or NCE without a preinstalled operating system or hypervisor).

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	Install the E-Series Server or NCE into the router.	See Installing the E-Series Server or NCE into the Router , on page 13.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 2	Configure the CIMC IP address for CIMC access.	See Configuring Access to the Management Firmware , on page 23.
Step 3	Access CIMC.	See Accessing the Management Firmware , on page 75.
Step 4	Configure RAID and make the disk drive bootable.	See Managing Storage Using RAID , on page 79. Important The RAID feature is applicable to E-Series Servers and the SM E-Series NCE. The RAID feature is not applicable to the EHWIC E-Series NCE and the NIM E-Series NCE.
Step 5	Install the operating system, and if needed, install the drivers.	See Installing the Operating System or Hypervisor , on page 93.
Step 6	Configure an internal connection between the router and the E-Series Server or NCE.	Depending on whether you want the traffic to flow through the router or not, do one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If you <i>do not want</i> the traffic to your application or operating system to flow through the router, use the server's host operating system to configure the E-Series Server's or NCE's external interface. • If you <i>want</i> the traffic to your application or operating system to flow through the router, use the Cisco IOS CLI to configure an internal connection between the router and the E-Series Server or NCE. See Configuring a Connection Between the Router and the E-Series Server or NCE, on page 115.

Basic Workflow for Option 2—E-Series Server or NCE With a Preinstalled Microsoft Windows Server

The following procedure provides the references for the tasks that you must perform when you purchase Option 2—E-Series Server or NCE with a preinstalled Microsoft Windows Server.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	Install the E-Series Server or NCE into the router.	See Installing the E-Series Server or NCE into the Router , on page 13.
Step 2	Configure the CIMC IP address for CIMC access.	See Configuring Access to the Management Firmware , on page 23.
Step 3	Configure an internal connection between the router and the E-Series Server or NCE.	Depending on whether you want the traffic to flow through the router or not, do one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If you <i>do not want</i> the traffic to your application or operating system to flow through the router, use the server's host operating system to configure the E-Series Server's or NCE's external interface. • If you <i>want</i> the traffic to your application or operating system to flow through the router, use the Cisco IOS CLI to configure an internal connection between the router and the E-Series Server or NCE. See Configuring a Connection Between the Router and the E-Series Server or NCE, on page 115.
Step 4	Access CIMC, and then access the Microsoft Windows Server from CIMC.	See Accessing the Management Firmware , on page 75.

Basic Workflow for Option 3—E-Series Server or NCE With a Preinstalled VMware vSphere Hypervisor

The following procedure provides the references for the tasks that you must perform when you purchase Option 3—E-Series Server or NCE with a preinstalled VMware vSphere Hypervisor.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	Install the E-Series Server or NCE into the router.	See Installing the E-Series Server or NCE into the Router , on page 13.
Step 2	Configure the CIMC IP address for CIMC access.	See Configuring Access to the Management Firmware , on page 23.
Step 3	Configure an internal connection between the router and the E-Series Server or NCE.	Depending on whether you want the traffic to flow through the router or not, do one of the following:

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> If you <i>do not want</i> the traffic to your application or operating system to flow through the router, use the server's host operating system to configure the E-Series Server's or NCE's external interface. If you <i>want</i> the traffic to your application or operating system to flow through the router, use the Cisco IOS CLI to configure an internal connection between the router and the E-Series Server or NCE. See Configuring a Connection Between the Router and the E-Series Server or NCE, on page 115.
Step 4	Access CIMC, and then access the VMware vSphere Hypervisor from CIMC.	See Accessing the Management Firmware , on page 75.

Common Terms Used in This Guide

Table 2: Common Terms

Term	Description
BMC	Board Management Controller. BMC is used in the Cisco IOS commands to configure CIMC.
CIMC	Cisco Integrated Management Controller. CIMC is the management service for the E-Series Server. CIMC runs within the server. You can use CIMC to access, configure, administer, and monitor the server.
CLI	Command-line interface.
IMC	Integrated Management Controller. IMC is used in the Cisco IOS commands to configure CIMC.
LOM	LAN on Motherboard. Shared LOM interfaces are used to configure CIMC access.
RAID	Redundant Array of Inexpensive Disks. RAID is used to store E-Series Server data files.



CHAPTER 3

Installing the E-Series Server or NCE into the Router

This chapter includes the following sections:

- [Basic Workflow for Installing the E-Series Server or NCE into the Router, on page 13](#)
- [Verifying Compatibility, on page 14](#)
- [Installing the E-Series Server and the NCE into a Router, on page 15](#)
- [Verifying Installation, on page 18](#)
- [Stopping the E-Series Server from Resetting and Updating the CIMC Firmware—Cisco ISR 4000 Series, on page 21](#)
- [What to Do Next, on page 22](#)

Basic Workflow for Installing the E-Series Server or NCE into the Router

1. Verify that the router, the E-Series Server or NCE, and the Cisco IOS software version that is installed on the router are compatible.
2. Install the E-Series Server or NCE into the router.



Important

If you are migrating the E-Series Server from a Cisco ISR G2 into a Cisco ISR 4000 series, you must first update the CIMC firmware image to release 2.0(1.20130626092411) or the latest version and the BIOS firmware image to release 1.5.0.2 or the latest version—while the E-Series Server is still installed in the Cisco ISR G2—and then migrate it into the Cisco ISR 4000 series. For CIMC firmware installation instructions, see the "CIMC Firmware Management" chapter in the *GUI Configuration Guide for Cisco UCS E-Series Servers and the Cisco UCS E-Series Network Compute Engine* on Cisco.com.

3. Verify that the E-Series Server or the NCE is correctly detected by the router.

Verifying Compatibility

Verifying the Cisco ISR G2, E-Series Server, NCE, and Cisco IOS Software Release Compatibility

Table 3: Router, E-Series Server, NCE, and Cisco IOS Release Compatibility

Router	Cisco IOS Software Release for Single-Wide E-Series Servers and the SM E-Series NCE	Cisco IOS Software Release for Double-Wide E-Series Servers	Cisco IOS Software Release for the EHWIC E-Series NCE
1921	—	—	15.4(3)M and later releases
1941	—	—	15.4(3)M and later releases
2911	15.2(4)M and later releases	—	15.4(3)M and later releases
2921	15.2(4)M and later releases	15.2(4)M and later releases	15.4(3)M and later releases
2951	15.2(4)M and later releases	15.2(4)M and later releases	15.4(3)M and later releases
3925	15.2(4)M and later releases	15.2(4)M and later releases	15.4(3)M and later releases
3925e	15.2(4)M and later releases	15.2(4)M and later releases	15.4(3)M and later releases
3945	15.2(4)M and later releases	15.2(4)M and later releases	15.4(3)M and later releases
3945e	15.2(4)M and later releases	15.2(4)M and later releases	15.4(3)M and later releases

Verifying the Cisco ISR 4000 Series, E-Series Server, NIM, CIMC, and Cisco IOS Software Release Compatibility

Table 4: Cisco ISR 4000 Series, E-Series Server, NIM, CIMC, and Cisco IOS Release Compatibility

Router	Cisco IOS Software Release for Single-Wide E-Series Servers and the SM E-Series NCE	Cisco IOS Software Release for Double-Wide E-Series Servers	Cisco IOS Software Release for NIM E-Series NCE	CIMC
4400 Series	XE 3.12S	XE 3.12S	–	2.2.2 and later releases
	XE 3.13S and later releases	XE 3.13S and later releases	–	2.3.1 and later releases
	–	–	XE 3.15S and later releases	3.0.1 and later releases
	XE 16.2.1 1	XE 16.2.1	XE 16.2.1	3.0.1 and later releases
4300 Series	XE 3.13S and later releases	XE 3.13S and later releases	–	2.3.1 and later releases
	–	–	XE 3.15S and later releases	3.0.1 and later releases
	XE 16.2.1	XE 16.2.1	XE 16.2.1	3.0.1 and later releases

¹ Do not downgrade the release version from XE 16.2.1. If you downgrade the release version from XE 16.2.1, the UCS-E module will not come up due to CSCux77048. To bring the UCS-E module up, do an OIR using the **hw-module subslot x/y reload** command.

Installing the E-Series Server and the NCE into a Router

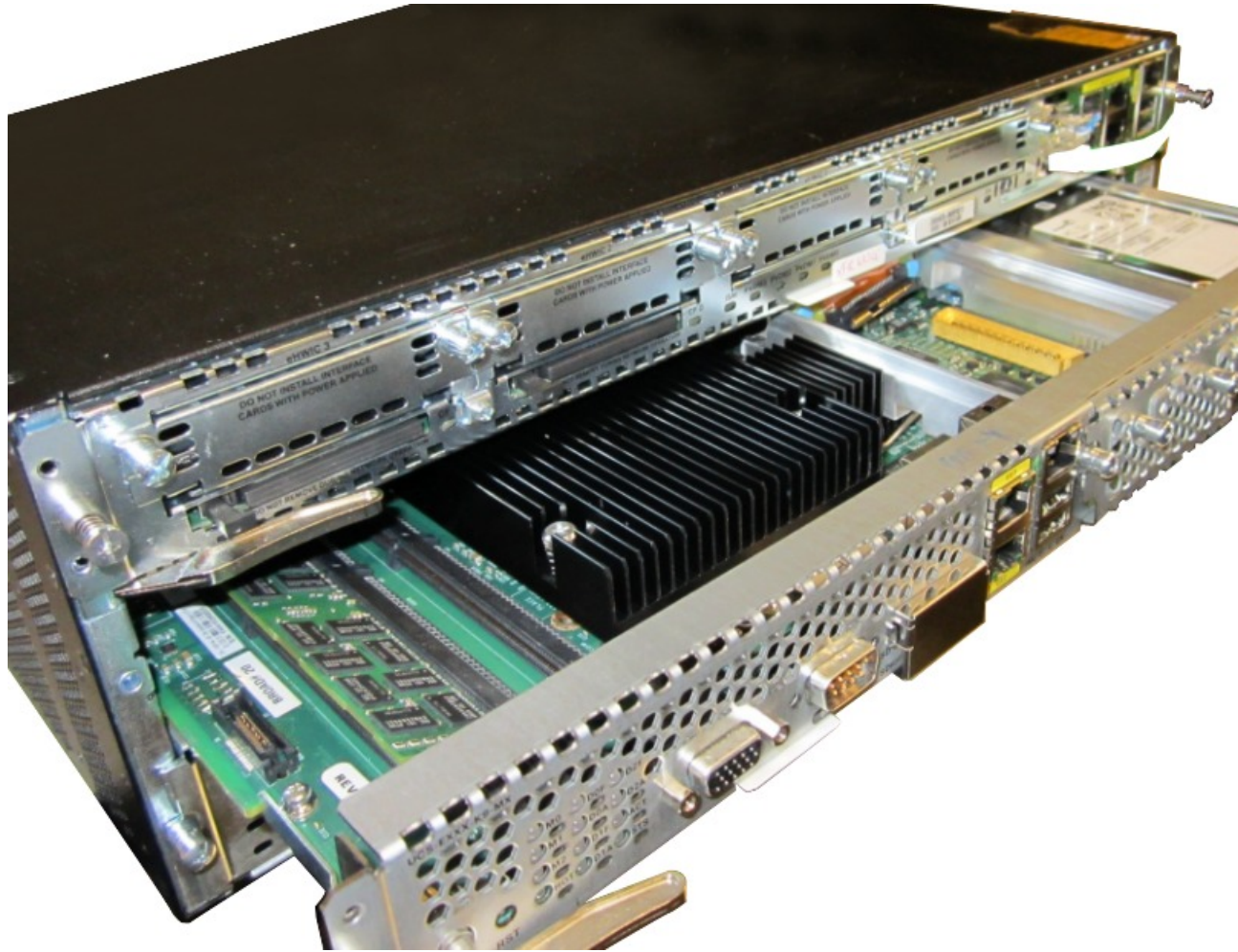
The following figures show how to install the E-Series Server and the EHWIC E-Series NCE into a router. For detailed information, see the *Hardware Installation Guide for Cisco UCS E-Series Servers and the Cisco UCS E-Series Network Compute Engine* on Cisco.com.

Double-Wide E-Series Server in a Cisco ISR G2



Caution Before you install or remove the E-Series Server from a Cisco 2900 series ISR G2, make sure that you first power down the router, and then install or remove the server.

Figure 4: Double-Wide E-Series Server in a Cisco ISR G2



Double-Wide E-Series Server in a Cisco ISR 4000 Series

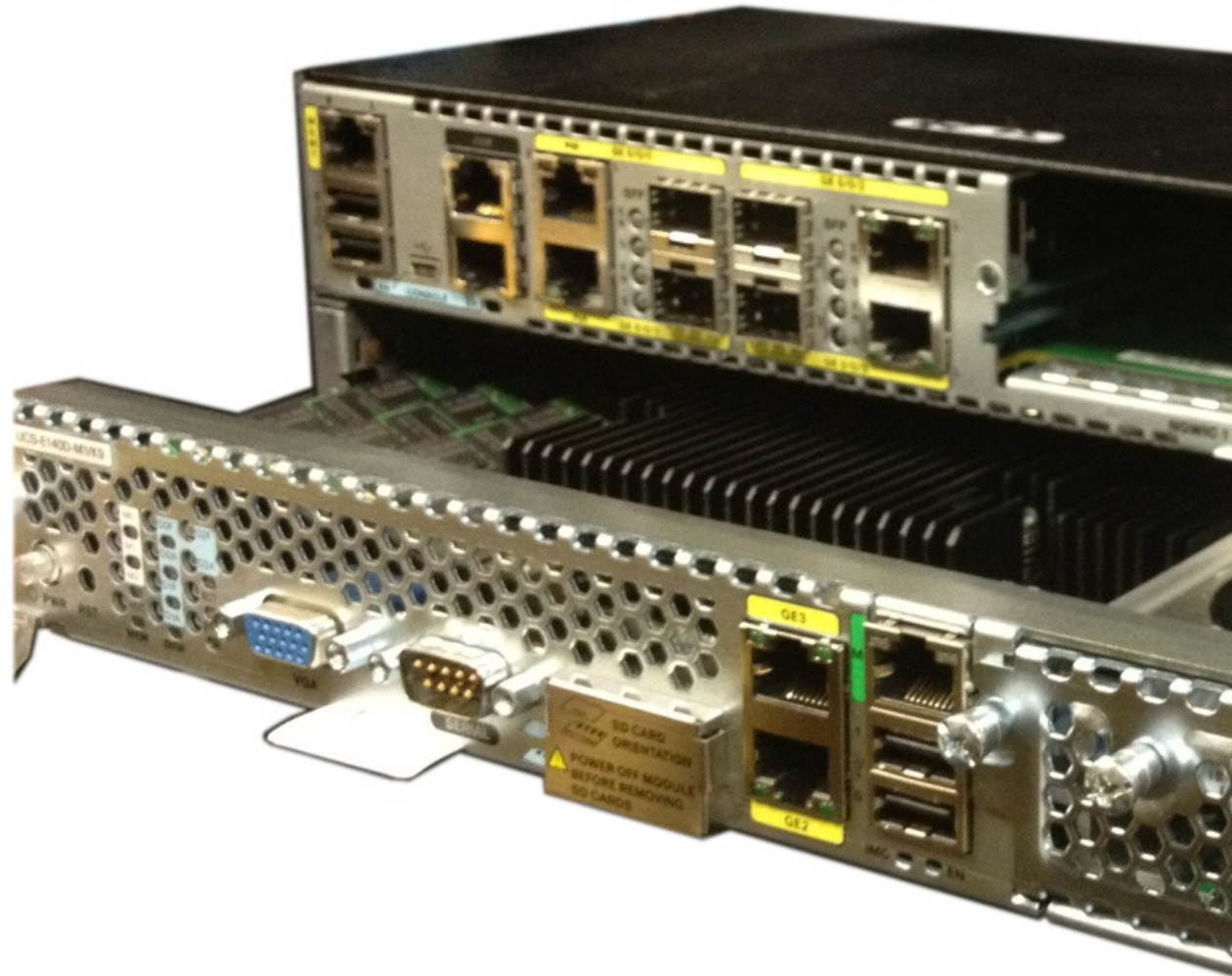


Important If you are migrating the E-Series Server from a Cisco ISR G2 into a Cisco ISR 4000 series, you must first upgrade the CIMC and the BIOS firmware image to the latest version—while the E-Series Server is still installed in the Cisco ISR G2—and then migrate it into the Cisco ISR 4000 series. We strongly recommend that you upgrade both the CIMC and the BIOS firmware images.

You can use either the Cisco Host Upgrade Utility (HUU) to upgrade the firmware components or you can upgrade the firmware components manually. For firmware upgrade information, see [Upgrading Firmware, on page 139](#).

If you migrate the E-Series Server into the Cisco ISR 4000 series without first updating the CIMC firmware, the E-Series Server might continuously reset. To stop the reset and install the firmware, see [Stopping the E-Series Server from Resetting and Updating the CIMC Firmware—Cisco ISR 4000 Series, on page 21](#).

Figure 5: Double-Wide E-Series Server in a Cisco ISR 4000 series



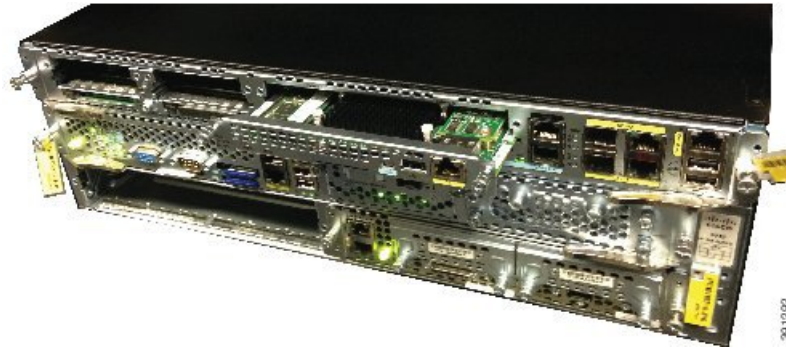
EHWIC E-Series NCE in a Cisco ISR G2



Caution

Before you install or remove the EHWIC E-Series NCE from a Cisco ISR G2, make sure that you first power down the router, and then install or remove the NCE.

Figure 6: EHWIC E-Series NCE in a Cisco ISR G2



NIM E-Series NCE in a Cisco ISR 4000 Series

Figure 7: NIM E-Series NCE in a Cisco ISR 4000 Series



Verifying Installation

Verifying E-Series Server Installation

Before You Begin

- Install the E-Series Server into the router.
- Load a compatible Cisco IOS image.
- Power on the server.

To verify the E-Series Server installation, use one of the following commands:

Procedure

- To display a high-level overview of the entire physical system, use the **show platform** command:

```
Router# show platform
Chassis type: ISR4451/K9
Slot      Type                State                Insert time (ago)
-----
0         ISR4451/K9         ok                   1d01h
```

```

0/0      ISR4400-4X1GE      ok          1d01h
1        ISR4451/K9       ok          1d01h
1/0      UCS-E160DP-M1/K9 ok          1d01h
2        ISR4451/K9       ok          1d01h
R0       ISR4451/K9       ok, active  1d01h
F0       ISR4451/K9       ok, active  1d01h
P0       XXX-XXXX-XX     ok          1d01h
P1       Unknown         ps,        1d01h
P2       ACS-4450-FANASSY ok          1d01h

```

```

Slot      CPLD Version      Firmware Version
-----
0         12090323          12.2 (20120829:165313)
1         12090323          12.2 (20120829:165313)
2         12090323          12.2 (20120829:165313)
R0        12090323          12.2 (20120829:165313)
F0        12090323          12.2 (20120829:165313)

```

- To verify that the router recognizes the E-Series Server, use the **show hw-module subslot all oir** command:

```

Router# show hw-module subslot all oir
Module      Model              Operational Status
-----
subslot 0/0  ISR4451-X-4X1GE    ok
subslot 1/0  UCS-E140S-M1/K9    ok
subslot 2/0  UCS-E140S-M1/K9    ok

```

Verifying the EHWIC E-Series NCE Installation

Before you begin

- Install the EHWIC E-Series NCE into the router.
- Load a compatible Cisco IOS image.
- Power on the NCE.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	Router> show inventory	Verifies that the router detects the presence of the newly installed EHWIC E-Series NCE.

Example

```
Router> show inventory
```

```
NAME: "CISCO3945-CHASSIS", DESCR: "CISCO3945-CHASSIS"
PID: CISCO3945-CHASSIS , VID: V02, SN: FGL1539100Q
```

```
NAME: "Cisco Services Performance Engine 150 for Cisco 3900 ISR on Slot 0", DESCR: "Cisco
Services Performance Engine 150 for Cisco 3900 ISR"
PID: C3900-SPE150/K9 , VID: V05 , SN: FOC15367HAZ
```

```
NAME: "Enhanced WAN Interface Card UCS Server on Slot 0 SubSlot 3", DESCR: "Enhanced WAN
```

```
Interface Card UCS Server"
PID: UCS-EN120E-M2/K9 , VID: V01, SN: FOC17462K2A

NAME: "C3900 AC Power Supply 1", DESCR: "C3900 AC Power Supply 1"
PID: PWR-3900-AC , VID: V03, SN: SNI1511C8SM
```

Verifying NIM E-Series NCE Installation

Before You Begin

- Install the NIM E-Series NCE into the router.
- Load a compatible Cisco IOS image.
- Power on the server.

To verify the NIM E-Series NCE installation, use one of the following commands:

Procedure

- To display a high-level overview of the entire physical system, use the **show platform** command:

```
Router# show platform
Chassis type: ISR4351/K9

0/1      UCS-EN140N-M2/K9   ok           3w5d
1/0      UCS-E140DP-M1/K9   ok           4w6d
2        ISR4351/K9         ok           5w2d
R0       ISR4351/K9         ok, active   5w2d
F0       ISR4351/K9         ok, active   5w2d
P0       PWR-4450-AC        ok           5w2d
P2       ACS-4450-FANASSY   ok           5w2d
```

Slot	CPLD Version	Firmware Version
0	14080523	15.4 (3r) S1
1	14080523	15.4 (3r) S1
2	14080523	15.4 (3r) S1
R0	14080523	15.4 (3r) S1
F0	14080523	15.4 (3r) S1

- To verify that the router recognizes the NIM E-Series NCE, use the **show hw-module subslot all oir** command:

```
Router# show hw-module subslot all oir
Module      Model              Operational Status
-----
subslot 0/0  ISR4351-3x1GE      ok
subslot 0/1  UCS-EN140N-M2/K9   ok
subslot 1/0  UCS-E140DP-M1/K9   ok
```


Stopping the E-Series Server from Resetting and Updating the CIMC Firmware—Cisco ISR 4000 Series

If you migrate the E-Series Server into the Cisco ISR 4000 series without first updating the CIMC firmware, the E-Series Server will continuously reset. Use this procedure to stop the reset and install the firmware.



Note Some of the steps in this procedure are performed from the router, and other steps are performed from the E-Series Server.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	Router# hw-module subslot slot/subslot maintenance enable	Disables error recovery, which stops the E-Series Server from being reset. Note Enter the commands in Step 1 and Step 2 from the router.
Step 2	Router# hw-module subslot slot/subslot session imc	Starts a CIMC session.
Step 3	Server# scope cimc	Enters CIMC command mode. Note Enter the commands in Step 3 through Step 8 from the E-Series Server.
Step 4	Server/cimc # scope firmware	Enters CIMC firmware command mode.
Step 5	Server/cimc/firmware # update tftp-ip-address path-and-filename	Starts CIMC firmware update. The server will obtain the update firmware at the specified path and filename from the TFTP server at the specified IP address.
Step 6	Server/cimc/firmware # show [detail]	Displays the available firmware and status.
Step 7	Server/cimc/firmware # activate [1 2]	Activates the selected image. If no image number is specified, the server activates the currently inactive image.
Step 8	Press Ctrl-a Ctrl-q .	Exits the CIMC session.
Step 9	Router# hw-module subslot slot/subslot maintenance disable	Enables error recovery. Note Enter the commands in Step 9 and Step 10 from the router.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 10	Router# hw-module subslot <i>slot/subslot</i> reload	Reloads the E-Series Server. Note This reload power-cycles the E-Series Server.

What to Do Next

Configure the CIMC IP address for CIMC access. See [Configuring Access to the Management Firmware](#), on page 23.



CHAPTER 4

Configuring Access to the Management Firmware

This chapter provides an overview of the E-Series Server and NCE interfaces and provides procedures to configure access to the CIMC management firmware when the E-Series Server or NCE is installed in the router. It contains the following sections:

- [Configuring CIMC Access, on page 23](#)
- [Configuring CIMC Access Using the CIMC Configuration Utility, on page 70](#)
- [Defining Network Static Settings Using a Script File, on page 72](#)
- [What to Do Next, on page 73](#)

Configuring CIMC Access

If you are a remote user, use the Cisco IOS CLI to configure CIMC access.

If you are a local user, use one of the following methods:

- Connect a keyboard and monitor to the front panel of the E-Series Server, and then use the CIMC Configuration Utility to configure CIMC access.



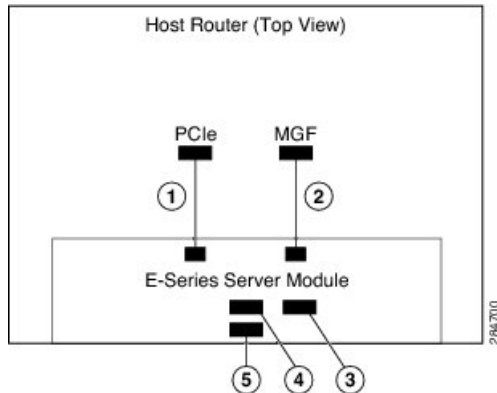
Note The CIMC Configuration Utility is not applicable to the EHWIC E-Series NCE and the NIM E-Series NCE.

- Use the Cisco IOS CLI to configure CIMC access. See one of the following as appropriate:
 - [CIMC Access Configuration Options—Cisco ISR G2, on page 25](#)
 - [CIMC Access Configuration Options—Cisco ISR 4000 Series, on page 38](#)
 - [CIMC Access Configuration Options—EHWIC E-Series NCE, on page 51](#)
 - [CIMC Access Configuration Options—NIM E-Series NCE, on page 60](#)

Understanding the Interfaces in an E-Series Server and the Cisco ISR G2

The following figure shows the interfaces in a double-wide E-Series Server and the Cisco ISR G2 host router.

Figure 8: Interfaces in a Double-Wide E-Series Server



	Interface	Interface Location	Description
1	Router's PCIe <i>slot/0</i> Interface	Internal Interface	Also called Console interface. This interface connects the router's PCIe interface to the E-Series Server. The PCIe interface provides an internal Layer 3 GE link between the router and the E-Series Server. It can be used both for CIMC configuration and for host operating system configuration.
2	Router's MGF <i>slot/1</i> VLAN Interface	Internal Interface	Used to access CIMC over a high-speed backplane switch. The MGF VLAN interface provides an internal Layer 2 GE link between the router and the E-Series Server. This interface can be used both for CIMC configuration and for host operating system configuration.
3	Management (Dedicated) Interface	External Interface	Used for CIMC configuration and management.
4	GE3 Interface	External Interface	Used as a primary interface or as a backup interface. This interface can be used both for CIMC configuration and for host operating system configuration. Note The GE3 interface is only available on the double-wide E-Series Servers.

5	GE2 Interface	External Interface	Used as a primary interface or as a backup interface. This interface can be used both for CIMC configuration and for host operating system configuration.
---	---------------	--------------------	---

CIMC Access Configuration Options—Cisco ISR G2

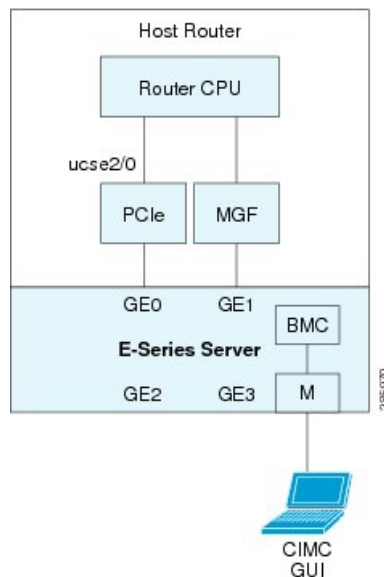
Depending on whether you are a remote user or a local user, do one of the following to configure CIMC access.

- If you are a remote user, use either the external Management (dedicated) interface or one of the following shared LOM interfaces to configure CIMC access:
 - Router’s internal PCIe *slot/0* Console interface
 - Router's internal MGF *slot/1* VLAN interface
 - E-Series Server’s external GE2 or GE3 interface
- If you are a local user, use the Cisco IOS CLI or the CIMC Configuration Utility to configure CIMC access.

Configuring CIMC Access Using the E-Series Server's External Management (Dedicated) Interface—Cisco ISR G2

See the following figure and the procedure that follows to configure CIMC access using the E-Series Server's external Management (dedicated) interface.

Figure 9: Configuring CIMC Access Using the E-Series Server's External Management (Dedicated) Interface



Before you begin

Make sure that you have the following information:

- IP address of CIMC.

- Username and password for logging in to the router.
- Slot or subslot and port number of the E-Series Server or NCE.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	Router> enable	Enters privileged EXEC mode on the host router. Enter your password if prompted.
Step 2	Router# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode on the host router.
Step 3	Router (config)# interface ucse slot/port	Enters interface configuration mode for the slot and port where the E-Series Server is installed.
Step 4	Router (config-if)# imc ip address <i>cimc-ip-address subnet-mask default-gateway</i> <i>cimc-gateway-ip-address</i>	Specifies the IP address of CIMC and the IP address of the default gateway that CIMC must use. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>cimc-ip-address</i>—IP address of CIMC. • <i>subnet-mask</i>—Subnet mask used to append to the IP address; must be in the same subnet as the host router. • <i>cimc-gateway-ip-address</i>—IP address for the default gateway.
Step 5	Router (config-if)# imc access-port dedicated	Configures CIMC access through the server's external Management (dedicated) interface. See # 3 in Understanding the Interfaces in an E-Series Server and the Cisco ISR G2 .
Step 6	Router (config-if)# no shut	Causes the interface to be administratively up.
Step 7	Router (config-if)# end	Exits interface configuration mode.

Example

This example shows how to configure CIMC access using the server's external IMC dedicated interface:

```
Router> enable
Router> password
Router# configure terminal

Router(config)# interface ucse 2/0
Router(config-if)# imc ip address 10.0.0.1 255.0.0.0 default-gateway 10.0.0.2
Router(config-if)# imc access-port dedicated
Router(config-if)# no shut
Router(config-if)# end
```

Configuring CIMC Access Using Shared LOM—Cisco ISR G2

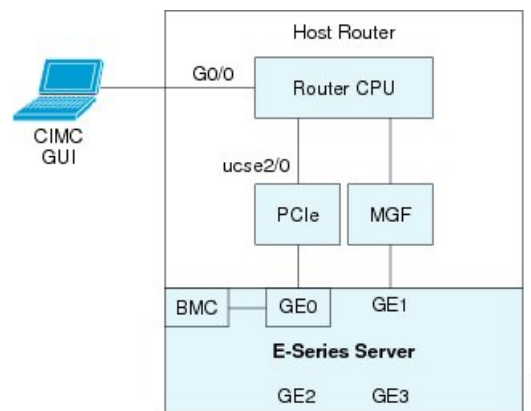
Use one of the following shared LOM interfaces to configure CIMC access:

- Router’s internal PCIe *slot/0* Console interface
- Router’s internal MGF *slot/1* VLAN interface
- E-Series Server’s external GE2 or GE3 interface

Configuring CIMC Access Using the Router’s Internal PCIe slot/0 Console Interface—Cisco ISR G2

See the following figure and the procedure that follows to configure CIMC access using the router’s internal PCIe *slot/0* Console interface.

Figure 10: Configuring CIMC Access Using the Router’s Internal PCIe slot/0 Console Interface



Before you begin

Make sure that you have the following information:

- IP address of CIMC.
- Username and password for logging in to the router.
- Slot or subslot and port number of the E-Series Server or NCE.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	Router> enable	Enters privileged EXEC mode on the host router. Enter your password if prompted.
Step 2	Router# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode on the host router.
Step 3	Router (config)# interface GigabitEthernet0/0	Enters interface configuration mode for Gigabit Ethernet 0/0.
Step 4	Router (config-if)# ip address ip-address subnet-mask	Specifies the IP address and subnet mask of the interface.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 5	Router (config-if)# no shut	Causes the interface to be administratively up.
Step 6	Router (config-if)# end	Exits interface configuration mode.
Step 7	Router# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode on the host router.
Step 8	Router (config)# interface ucse slot/port	Enters interface configuration mode for the slot and port where the E-Series Server is installed.
Step 9	Router (config-if)# ip unnumbered type number	<p>The ip unnumbered command enables IP processing on an interface without assigning an explicit IP address to that interface.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>type</i>—Type of interface on which the router has an assigned IP address. • <i>number</i>—Number of the interface and subinterface on which the router has an assigned IP address. <p>Note The unnumbered interface must be unique. It cannot be another unnumbered interface.</p> <p>When you use the ip unnumbered command, you must use the ip route command to create a static route.</p> <p>Caution The ip unnumbered and ipv6 unnumbered commands create a point-to-point interface between devices. Broadcasting is not supported.</p>
Step 10	Router (config-if)# imc ip address cimc-ip-address subnet-mask default-gateway cimc-gateway-ip-address	<p>Specifies the IP address of CIMC and the IP address of the default gateway that CIMC must use.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>cimc-ip-address</i>—IP address of CIMC. • <i>subnet-mask</i>—Subnet mask used to append to the IP address; must be in the same subnet as the host router. • <i>cimc-gateway-ip-address</i>—IP address for the default gateway.
Step 11	Router (config-if)# imc access-port shared-lom console	Configures CIMC access using the router's PCIe slot/0 (console) interface. See # 1 in

	Command or Action	Purpose
		Understanding the Interfaces in an E-Series Server and the Cisco ISR G2.
Step 12	Router (config-if)# no shut	Causes the interface to be administratively up.
Step 13	Router (config-if)# end	Exits interface configuration mode.
Step 14	Router# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode on the host router.
Step 15	Router (config)# ip route <i>cimc-ip-address</i> <i>subnet-mask</i> ucse slot/port	Creates a static route. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>cimc-ip-address</i>—IP address of CIMC. • <i>slot/port</i>—Slot and port where the E-Series Server is installed.
Step 16	Router (config-if)# end	Exits interface configuration mode.
Step 17	Router# ping <i>cimc-ip-address</i>	Verifies connection from the router to CIMC through the router's internal PCIe <i>slot/0</i> console interface.

Example

This example shows how to configure CIMC access using the server's internal PCIe *slot/0* console interface:

```
Router> enable
Router> password
Router# configure terminal

Router(config)# interface GigabitEthernet0/0
Router(config-if)# ip address 10.0.0.1 255.0.0.0
Router(config-if)# no shut
Router(config-if)# end

Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# interface ucse 2/0
Router(config)# ip unnumbered GigabitEthernet0/0
Router(config-if)# imc ip address 10.0.0.2 255.0.0.0 default-gateway 10.0.0.1
Router(config-if)# imc access-port shared-lom console
Router(config-if)# no shut
Router(config)# end

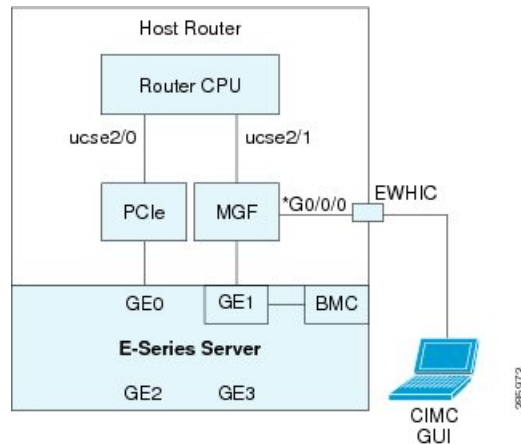
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# ip route 10.0.0.2 255.255.255.255 ucse 2/0
Router(config)# end

Router# ping 10.0.0.2
Type escape sequence to abort.
Sending 5, 100-byte ICMP Echos to 10.0.0.2, timeout is 2 seconds:
!!!!
Success rate is 100 percent (5/5), round-trip min/avg/max = 1/2/4 ms
```

Configuring CIMC Access Using the Router's Internal MGF slot/1 VLAN Interface—Cisco ISR G2

See the following figure and the procedure that follows to configure CIMC access using the router's internal MGF *slot/1* VLAN interface.

Figure 11: Configuring CIMC Access Using the Router's Internal MGF slot/1 VLAN Interface



Before you begin

Make sure that you have the following information:

- IP address of CIMC.
- Username and password for logging in to the router.
- Slot or subslot and port number of the E-Series Server or NCE.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	Router> enable	Enters privileged EXEC mode on the host router. Enter your password if prompted.
Step 2	Router# show vlan-switch	Displays VLANs.
Step 3	Router# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode on the host router.
Step 4	Router (config)# interface vlan <i>vlan-number</i>	Enters VLAN configuration mode for the specified VLAN number.
Step 5	Router (config-if)# ip address <i>vlan-ip-address</i> <i>subnet-mask</i>	Specifies the IP address for the VLAN. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>vlan-ip-address</i>—IP address of the VLAN. • <i>subnet-mask</i>—Subnet mask to append to the IP address.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 6	Router (config-if)# end	Exits interface configuration mode.
Step 7	Router# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode on the host router.
Step 8	Router (config)# interface ucse slot/port	Enters interface configuration mode for the slot and port where the E-Series Server is installed.
Step 9	Router (config-if)# imc ip address <i>cimc-ip-address subnet-mask default-gateway</i> <i>cimc-gateway-ip-address</i>	Specifies the IP address of CIMC and the IP address of the default gateway that CIMC must use. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>cimc-ip-address</i>—IP address of CIMC. • <i>subnet-mask</i>—Subnet mask used to append to the IP address; must be in the same subnet as the host router. • <i>cimc-gateway-ip-address</i>—IP address for the default gateway.
Step 10	Router (config-if)# imc access-port shared-lom GE1	Configures CIMC access using the router's internal <i>slot/1</i> MGF VLAN interface. See # 2 in Understanding the Interfaces in an E-Series Server and the Cisco ISR G2 .
Step 11	Router (config-if)# no shut	Causes the interface to be administratively up.
Step 12	Router (config-if)# end	Exits interface configuration mode.
Step 13	Router# ping <i>cimc-ip-address</i>	Verifies connection from the router to CIMC through the router's internal MGF <i>slot/1</i> VLAN interface.

Example

This example shows how to configure CIMC access using the router's internal MGF *slot/1* VLAN interface:

```
Router> enable
Router> password
Router> show vlan-switch
VLAN Name                Status      Ports
-----
1    default                active     Gi0/0/0, Gi0/0/1, Gi0/0/2
                                           Gi0/0/3, uc2/1

Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# interface vlan 1
Router(config-if)# ip address 10.0.0.1 255.0.0.0
Router(config-if)# end

Router# configure terminal
```

```

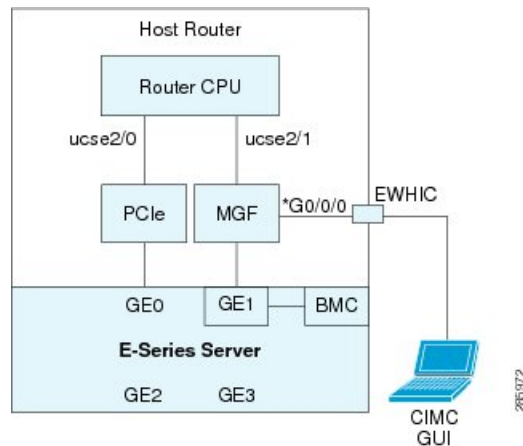
Router(config)# interface ucse 2/0
Router(config-if)# imc ip address 10.0.0.2 255.0.0.0 default-gateway 10.0.0.1
Router(config-if)# imc access-port shared-lom GE1
Router(config-if)# no shut
Router(config-if)# end

Router# ping 10.0.0.2
Type escape sequence to abort.
Sending 5, 100-byte ICMP Echos to 10.0.0.2, timeout is 2 seconds:
!!!!
Success rate is 100 percent (5/5), round-trip min/avg/max = 1/2/4 ms
    
```

Configuring CIMC Access Using the Router's Internal MGF slot/1 Interface Using a Non-Native VLAN—Cisco ISR G2

See the following figure and the procedure that follows to configure CIMC access using the router's internal MGF *slot/1* interface using a non-native VLAN.

Figure 12: Configuring CIMC Access Using the Router's Internal MGF slot/1 Interface Using a Non-Native VLAN



Before you begin

Make sure that you have the following information:

- IP address of CIMC.
- Username and password for logging in to the router.
- Slot or subslot and port number of the E-Series Server or NCE.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	Router> enable	Enters privileged EXEC mode on the host router. Enter your password if prompted.
Step 2	Router# show vlan-switch	Displays VLANs.
Step 3	Router# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode on the host router.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 4	Router (config)# vlan <i>vlan-number</i>	Configures the specified VLAN.
Step 5	Router (config)# end	Exits VLAN configuration.
Step 6	Router# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode on the host router.
Step 7	Router (config)# interface vlan <i>vlan-number</i>	Enters VLAN configuration mode for the specified VLAN number.
Step 8	Router (config-if)# ip address <i>vlan-ip-address</i> <i>subnet-mask</i>	Specifies the IP address for the VLAN. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>vlan-ip-address</i>—IP address of the VLAN. • <i>subnet-mask</i>—Subnet mask to append to the IP address.
Step 9	Router (config-if)# end	Exits interface configuration mode.
Step 10	Router# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode on the host router.
Step 11	Router (config)# interface ucse <i>slot/port</i>	Enters interface configuration mode for the slot and port where the E-Series Server is installed.
Step 12	Router (config)# imc vlan <i>vlan-id</i>	Configures the specified VLAN ID for CIMC.
Step 13	Router (config-if)# imc ip address <i>cimc-ip-address</i> <i>subnet-mask</i> default-gateway <i>cimc-gateway-ip-address</i>	Specifies the IP address of CIMC and the IP address of the default gateway that CIMC must use. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>cimc-ip-address</i>—IP address of CIMC. • <i>subnet-mask</i>—Subnet mask used to append to the IP address; must be in the same subnet as the host router. • <i>cimc-gateway-ip-address</i>—IP address for the default gateway.
Step 14	Router (config-if)# imc access-port shared-lom GE1	Configures CIMC access using the router's internal <i>slot/1</i> MGF VLAN interface. See # 2 in Understanding the Interfaces in an E-Series Server and the Cisco ISR G2 .
Step 15	Router (config-if)# no shut	Causes the interface to be administratively up.
Step 16	Router (config-if)# end	Exits interface configuration mode.
Step 17	Router# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode on the host router.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 18	Router (config)# interface ucse slot/1	Enters interface configuration mode for the router's MGF <i>slot/1</i> VLAN interface.
Step 19	Router (config-if)# switchport mode trunk	Puts the port into permanent trunking mode. The default configuration is access mode.
Step 20	Router (config-if)# no shut	Causes the interface to be administratively up.
Step 21	Router (config-if)# end	Exits interface configuration mode.
Step 22	Router# ping cimc-ip-address	Verifies connection from the router to CIMC through the router's internal MGF <i>slot/1</i> VLAN interface.

Example

This example shows how to configure CIMC access using the router's internal MGF *slot/1* interface using a non-native VLAN:

```

Router> enable
Router> password
Router> show vlan-switch
VLAN Name                Status      Ports
-----
1    default                active     Gi0/0/0, Gi0/0/1, Gi0/0/2
                                           Gi0/0/3, uc2/1

Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# vlan 2
Router(config)# end

Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# interface vlan 2
Router(config-if)# ip address 10.0.0.1 255.0.0.0
Router(config-if)# end

Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# interface ucse 2/0
Router(config-if)# imc vlan 2
Router(config-if)# imc ip address 10.0.0.2 255.0.0.0 default-gateway 10.0.0.1
Router(config-if)# imc access-port shared-lom GE1
Router(config-if)# no shut
Router(config-if)# end

Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# interface ucse 2/1
Router(config-if)# switchport mode trunk
Router(config-if)# no shut
Router(config-if)# end

Router# ping 10.0.0.2
Type escape sequence to abort.
Sending 5, 100-byte ICMP Echos to 10.0.0.2, timeout is 2 seconds:
!!!!
Success rate is 100 percent (5/5), round-trip min/avg/max = 1/2/4 ms

```

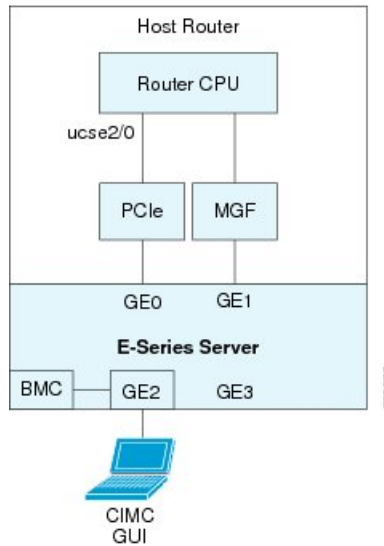
Configuring CIMC Access Using the E-Series Server's External GE2 or GE3 Interface—Cisco ISR G2

See the following figure and the procedure that follows to configure CIMC access using the E-Series Server's external GE2 or GE3 interface.



Note This figure shows how to configure CIMC access using the E-Series Server's external GE2 interface.

Figure 13: Configuring CIMC Access Using the E-Series Server's External GE2 Interface



Before you begin

Make sure that you have the following information:

- IP address of CIMC.
- Username and password for logging in to the router.
- Slot or subslot and port number of the E-Series Server or NCE.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	Router> enable	Enters privileged EXEC mode on the host router. Enter your password if prompted.
Step 2	Router# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode on the host router.
Step 3	Router (config)# interface ucse slot/port	Enters interface configuration mode for the slot and port where the E-Series Server is installed.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 4	Router (config-if)# imc ip address <i>cimc-ip-address subnet-mask default-gateway</i> <i>cimc-gateway-ip-address</i>	Specifies the IP address of CIMC and the IP address of the default gateway that CIMC must use. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>cimc-ip-address</i>—IP address of CIMC. • <i>subnet-mask</i>—Subnet mask used to append to the IP address; must be in the same subnet as the host router. • <i>cimc-gateway-ip-address</i>—IP address for the default gateway.
Step 5	Router (config-if)# imc access-port shared-lom {GE2 GE3}	Configures CIMC access through the E-Series Server's external GE2 or GE3 interface. See # 4 and 5 in Understanding the Interfaces in an E-Series Server and the Cisco ISR G2 .
Step 6	Router (config-if)# no shut	Causes the interface to be administratively up.
Step 7	Router (config-if)# end	Exits interface configuration mode.

Example

This example shows how to configure CIMC access using the server's external GE2 interface:

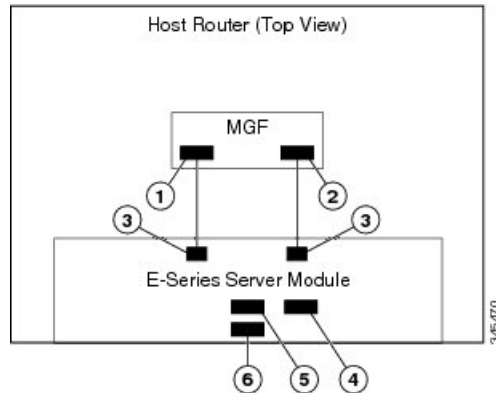
```
Router> enable
Router> password
Router# configure terminal

Router(config)# interface ucse 2/0
Router(config-if)# imc ip address 10.0.0.1 255.0.0.0 default-gateway 10.0.0.2
Router(config-if)# imc access-port shared-lom GE2
Router(config-if)# no shut
Router(config-if)# end
```

Understanding the Interfaces in an E-Series Server and the Cisco ISR 4000 Series

The following figure shows the interfaces in a double-wide E-Series Server and the Cisco ISR 4000 series host router.

Figure 14: Interfaces in a Double-Wide E-Series Server



	Interface	Interface Location	Description
1	Router's ucse slot/0/0 Interface	Internal Interface	Used to access CIMC over a high-speed backplane switch. The MGF interface provides an internal Layer 2 GE link between the router and the E-Series Server. This interface can be used both for CIMC configuration and for host operating system configuration. Note This interface is used to access the E-Series Server's internal GE0 interface.
2	Router's ucse slot/0/1 Interface	Internal Interface	Used to access CIMC over a high-speed backplane switch. The MGF interface provides an internal Layer 2 GE link between the router and the E-Series Server. This interface can be used both for CIMC configuration and for host operating system configuration. Note This interface is used to access the E-Series Server's internal GE1 interface.
3	GE0 and GE1 Interfaces	Internal Interfaces	E-Series Server's internal NIC interfaces.
4	Management (Dedicated) Interface	External Interface	Used for CIMC configuration and management.

5	GE3 Interface	External Interface	Can be used both for CIMC configuration and for host operating system configuration. Note The GE3 interface is only available on the double-wide E-Series Servers.
6	GE2 Interface	External Interface	Can be used both for CIMC configuration and for host operating system configuration.

CIMC Access Configuration Options—Cisco ISR 4000 Series

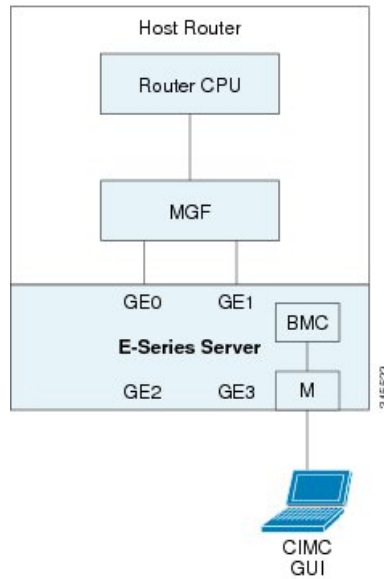
Depending on whether you are a remote user or a local user, do one of the following to configure CIMC access.

- If you are a remote user, use the Cisco IOS CLI to configure CIMC access by using one of the following interfaces:
 - CIMC Management (dedicated) interface
 - E-Series Server's internal GE0 and the router's **ucse slot/0/0** interface
 - E-Series Server's internal GE1 interface and the router's **ucse slot/0/1** interface
 - E-Series Server's external GE2 or GE3 interface
- If you are a local user, use the CIMC Configuration Utility or the Cisco IOS CLI (mentioned above) to configure CIMC access.

Configuring CIMC Access Using the E-Series Server's External Management (Dedicated) Interface—Cisco ISR 4000 Series

See the following figure and the procedure that follows to configure CIMC access using the E-Series Server's external Management (dedicated) interface.

Figure 15: Configuring CIMC Access Using the E-Series Server's External Management (Dedicated) Interface



Before you begin

Make sure that you have the following information:

- IP address of CIMC.
- Username and password for logging in to the router.
- Slot or subslot and port number of the E-Series Server or NCE.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	Router> enable	Enters privileged EXEC mode on the host router. Enter your password if prompted.
Step 2	Router# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode on the host router.
Step 3	Router (config)# ucse subslot slots/subslot	Enters ucse interface configuration mode for the slot and subslot where the E-Series Server is installed.
Step 4	Router (config-ucse)# imc ip address cimd-ip-address subnet-mask default-gateway cimd-gateway-ip-address	Specifies the IP address of CIMC and the IP address of the default gateway that CIMC must use. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>cimd-ip-address</i>—IP address of CIMC. • <i>subnet-mask</i>—Subnet mask used to append to the IP address; must be in the same subnet as the host router.

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <i>cimc-gateway-ip-address</i>—IP address for the default gateway.
Step 5	Enter one of the following commands: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Router (config-ucse)# imc access-port mgmt Router (config-ucse)# imc access-port dedicated 	Configures CIMC access through the server's external Management (dedicated) interface. See # 4 in Understanding the Interfaces in the NIM E-Series NCE and the Cisco ISR 4000 Series, on page 59 . <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Use the imc access-port mgmt command if you installed the Cisco IOS XE Release 3.9S. Use the imc access-port dedicated command if you installed the Cisco IOS XE Release 3.10S and later versions.
Step 6	Router (config-ucse)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode on the host router.

Example

This example shows how to configure CIMC access using the server's external management interface—Applicable only with Cisco IOS XE Release 3.9S:

```
Router> enable
Router> password
Router# configure terminal

Router(config)# ucse subslot 1/0
Router(config-ucse)# imc ip address 10.0.0.1 255.0.0.0 default-gateway 10.0.0.2
Router(config-ucse)# imc access-port mgmt
Router(config-ucse)# end
```

This example shows how to configure CIMC access using the server's external dedicated interface—Applicable with Cisco IOS XE Release 3.10S and later versions:

```
Router> enable
Router> password
Router# configure terminal

Router(config)# ucse subslot 1/0
Router(config-ucse)# imc ip address 10.0.0.1 255.0.0.0 default-gateway 10.0.0.2
Router(config-ucse)# imc access-port dedicated
Router(config-ucse)# end
```

Configuring CIMC Access Using the E-Series Server's NIC Interfaces—Cisco ISR 4000 Series

Use one of the following E-Series Server's NIC interfaces to access CIMC:

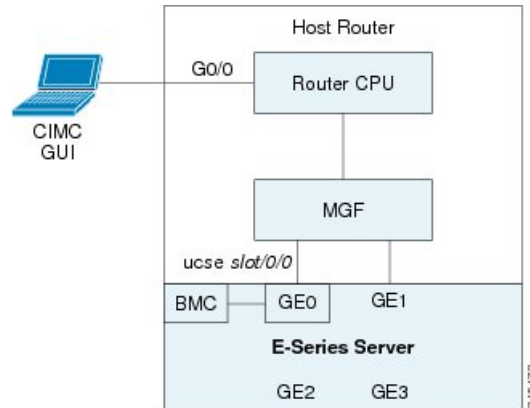
- E-Series Server's internal GE0 and the router's **ucse slot/0/0** interface

- E-Series Server's internal GE1 interface and the router's **ucse slot/0/1** interface
- E-Series Server's external GE2 or GE3 interface

Configuring CIMC Access Using the E-Series Server's Internal GE0 Interface and the Cisco ISR 4000 Series ucse slot/0/0 Interface

See the following figure and the procedure that follows to configure CIMC access using the E-Series Server's internal GE0 interface and the router's ucse slot/0/0 interface.

Figure 16: Configuring CIMC Access Using the E-Series Server's Internal GE0 Interface and the Router's ucse slot/0/0 Interface



Before you begin

Make sure that you have the following information:

- IP address of CIMC.
- Username and password for logging in to the router.
- Slot or subslot and port number of the E-Series Server or NCE.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	Router> enable	Enters privileged EXEC mode on the host router. Enter your password if prompted.
Step 2	Router# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode on the host router.
Step 3	Router (config)# interface GigabitEthernet 0/0/0	Enters interface configuration mode for Gigabit Ethernet interface 0/0/0.
Step 4	Router (config-if)# ip address ip-address subnet-mask	Specifies the IP address and subnet mask of the interface.
Step 5	Router (config-if)# no shut	Causes the interface to be administratively up.
Step 6	Router (config-if)# exit	Exits interface configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 7	Router (config)# interface ucse slot/0/0	Enters ucse interface configuration mode for the slot, subslot, and port where the E-Series Server is installed.
Step 8	Router (config-if)# ip unnumbered type number	<p>The ip unnumbered command enables IP processing on an interface without assigning an explicit IP address to that interface.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>type</i>—Type of interface on which the router has an assigned IP address. • <i>number</i>—Number of the interface and subinterface on which the router has an assigned IP address. <p>Note The unnumbered interface must be unique. It cannot be another unnumbered interface.</p> <p>When you use the ip unnumbered command, you must use the ip route command to create a static route.</p> <p>Caution The ip unnumbered and ipv6 unnumbered commands create a point-to-point interface between devices. Broadcasting is not supported.</p>
Step 9	Router (config-if)# no shut	Causes the interface to be administratively up.
Step 10	Router (config-if)# exit	Exits interface configuration mode.
Step 11	Router (config)# ucse subslot slot/subslot	Enters ucse interface configuration mode for the slot and subslot where the E-Series Server is installed.
Step 12	Router (config-ucse)# imc ip address cimc-ip-address subnet-mask default-gateway cimc-gateway-ip-address	<p>Specifies the IP address of CIMC and the IP address of the default gateway that CIMC must use.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>cimc-ip-address</i>—IP address of CIMC. • <i>subnet-mask</i>—Subnet mask used to append to the IP address; must be in the same subnet as the host router. • <i>cimc-gateway-ip-address</i>—IP address for the default gateway.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 13	Enter one of the following commands: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Router (config-ucse)# imc access-port ge0 • Router (config-ucse)# imc access-port shared-lom console 	Configures CIMC access using the E-Series Server's internal GE0 or console interface. See # 3 in Understanding the Interfaces in an E-Series Server and the Cisco ISR 4000 Series, on page 36 . <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Use the imc access-port ge0 command if you installed the Cisco IOS XE Release 3.9S. • Use the imc access-port shared-lom console command if you installed the Cisco IOS XE Release 3.10S and later versions.
Step 14	Router (config-ucse)# exit	Exits ucse interface configuration mode.
Step 15	Router (config)# ip route cimc-ip-address subnet-mask ucse slot/subslot/port	Creates a static route. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>cimc-ip-address</i>—IP address of CIMC. • <i>slot/subslot/port</i>—Slot, subslot, and port where the E-Series Server is installed.
Step 16	Router (config)# end	Exits configuration mode.
Step 17	Router# ping cimc-ip-address	Verifies the connection from the router to CIMC through the ucse slot/0/0 interface.

Example

This example shows how to configure CIMC access using the E-Series Server's internal GE0 interface and the router's ucse *slot/0/0* interface—Applicable only with Cisco IOS XE Release 3.9S:

```
Router> enable
Router> password
Router# configure terminal

Router(config)# interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0
Router(config-if)# ip address 10.0.0.1 255.0.0.0
Router(config-if)# no shut
Router(config-if)# exit

Router(config)# interface ucse 1/0/0
Router(config-if)# ip unnumbered GigabitEthernet0/0/0
Router(config-if)# no shut
Router(config-if)# exit

Router(config)# ucse subslot 1/0
Router(config-ucse)# imc ip address 10.0.0.2 255.0.0.0 default-gateway 10.0.0.1
Router(config-ucse)# imc access-port ge0
Router(config-ucse)# exit
```

```

Router(config)# ip route 10.0.0.2 255.255.255.255 ucse 1/0/0
Router(config)# end

Router# ping 10.0.0.2
Type escape sequence to abort.
Sending 5, 100-byte ICMP Echos to 10.0.0.2, timeout is 2 seconds:
!!!!
Success rate is 100 percent (5/5), round-trip min/avg/max = 1/2/4 ms

```

This example shows how to configure CIMC access using the E-Series Server's internal console interface and the router's ucse *slot/0/0* interface—Applicable with Cisco IOS XE Release 3.10S and later versions:

```

Router> enable
Router> password
Router# configure terminal

Router(config)# interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0
Router(config-if)# ip address 10.0.0.1 255.0.0.0
Router(config-if)# no shut
Router(config-if)# exit

Router(config)# interface ucse 1/0/0
Router(config-if)# ip unnumbered GigabitEthernet0/0/0
Router(config-if)# no shut
Router(config-if)# exit

Router(config)# ucse subslot 1/0
Router(config-ucse)# imc ip address 10.0.0.2 255.0.0.0 default-gateway 10.0.0.1
Router(config-ucse)# imc access-port shared-lom console
Router(config-ucse)# exit

Router(config)# ip route 10.0.0.2 255.255.255.255 ucse 1/0/0
Router(config)# end

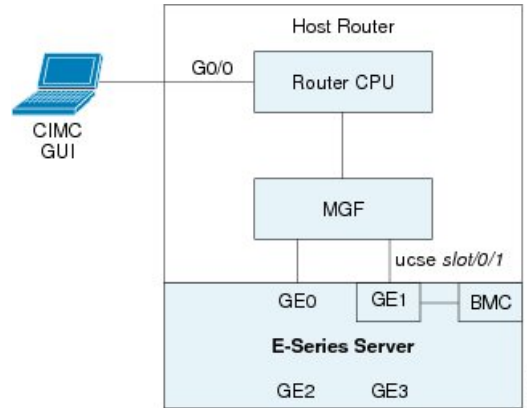
Router# ping 10.0.0.2
Type escape sequence to abort.
Sending 5, 100-byte ICMP Echos to 10.0.0.2, timeout is 2 seconds:
!!!!
Success rate is 100 percent (5/5), round-trip min/avg/max = 1/2/4 ms

```

Configuring CIMC Access Using the E-Series Server's Internal GE1 Interface and the Cisco ISR 4000 Series ucse slot/0/1 Interface

See the following figure and the procedure that follows to configure CIMC access using the E-Series Server's internal GE1 interface and the router's ucse *slot/0/1* interface.

Figure 17: Configuring CIMC Access Using the E-Series Server's Internal GE1 Interface and the Router's ucse slot/0/1 Interface



Before you begin

Make sure that you have the following information:

- IP address of CIMC.
- Username and password for logging in to the router.
- Slot or subslot and port number of the E-Series Server or NCE.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	Router> enable	Enters privileged EXEC mode on the host router. Enter your password if prompted.
Step 2	Router# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode on the host router.
Step 3	Router (config)# interface GigabitEthernet 0/0/0	Enters interface configuration mode for Gigabit Ethernet interface 0/0/0.
Step 4	Router (config-if)# ip address ip-address subnet-mask	Specifies the IP address and subnet mask of the interface.
Step 5	Router (config-if)# no shut	Causes the interface to be administratively up.
Step 6	Router (config-if)# exit	Exits interface configuration mode.
Step 7	Router (config)# interface ucse slot/0/1	Enters ucse interface configuration mode for the slot, subslot, and port where the E-Series Server is installed.
Step 8	Router (config-if)# ip unnumbered type number	The ip unnumbered command enables IP processing on an interface without assigning an explicit IP address to that interface.

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>type</i>—Type of interface on which the router has an assigned IP address. • <i>number</i>—Number of the interface and subinterface on which the router has an assigned IP address. <p>Note The unnumbered interface must be unique. It cannot be another unnumbered interface.</p> <p>When you use the ip unnumbered command, you must use the ip route command to create a static route.</p> <p>Caution The ip unnumbered and ipv6 unnumbered commands create a point-to-point interface between devices. Broadcasting is not supported.</p>
Step 9	Router (config-if)# no shut	Causes the interface to be administratively up.
Step 10	Router (config-if)# exit	Exits interface configuration mode.
Step 11	Router (config)# ucse subslot slot/subslot	Enters ucse interface configuration mode for the slot and subslot where the E-Series Server is installed.
Step 12	Router (config-ucse)# imc ip address <i>cimc-ip-address subnet-mask</i> default-gateway <i>cimc-gateway-ip-address</i>	Specifies the IP address of CIMC and the IP address of the default gateway that CIMC must use. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>cimc-ip-address</i>—IP address of CIMC. • <i>subnet-mask</i>—Subnet mask used to append to the IP address; must be in the same subnet as the host router. • <i>cimc-gateway-ip-address</i>—IP address for the default gateway.
Step 13	Enter one of the following commands: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Router (config-ucse)# imc access-port ge1 • Router (config-ucse)# imc access-port shared-lom ge1 	Configures CIMC access using the E-Series Server's internal GE1 interface. See # 3 in Understanding the Interfaces in an E-Series Server and the Cisco ISR 4000 Series, on page 36 . <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Use the imc access-port ge1 command if you installed the Cisco IOS XE Release 3.9S.

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Use the imc access-port shared-lom ge1 command if you installed the Cisco IOS XE Release 3.10S and later versions.
Step 14	Router (config-ucse)# exit	Exits ucse interface configuration mode.
Step 15	Router (config)# ip route <i>cimc-ip-address subnet-mask</i> ucse slot/subslot/port	Creates a static route. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <i>cimc-ip-address</i>—IP address of CIMC. <i>slot/subslot/port</i>—Slot, subslot, and port where the E-Series Server is installed.
Step 16	Router (config)# end	Exits configuration mode.
Step 17	Router# ping <i>cimc-ip-address</i>	Verifies the connection from the router to CIMC through the ucse slot/0/1 interface.

Example

This example shows how to configure CIMC access using the E-Series Server's internal GE1 interface and the router's ucse *slot/0/1* interface—Applicable only with Cisco IOS XE Release 3.9S:

```

Router> enable
Router> password
Router# configure terminal

Router(config)# interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0
Router(config-if)# ip address 10.0.0.1 255.0.0.0
Router(config-if)# no shut
Router(config-if)# exit

Router(config)# interface ucse 1/0/1
Router(config-if)# ip unnumbered GigabitEthernet0/0/0
Router(config-if)# no shut
Router(config-if)# exit

Router(config)# ucse subslot 1/0
Router(config-ucse)# imc ip address 10.0.0.2 255.0.0.0 default-gateway 10.0.0.1
Router(config-ucse)# imc access-port ge1
Router(config-ucse)# exit

Router(config)# ip route 10.0.0.2 255.255.255.255 ucse 1/0/1
Router(config)# end

Router# ping 10.0.0.2
Type escape sequence to abort.
Sending 5, 100-byte ICMP Echos to 10.0.0.2, timeout is 2 seconds:
!!!!
Success rate is 100 percent (5/5), round-trip min/avg/max = 1/2/4 ms
    
```

This example shows how to configure CIMC access using the E-Series Server's internal GE1 interface and the router's ucse *slot/0/1* interface—Applicable with Cisco IOS XE Release 3.10S and later releases:

```

Router> enable
Router> password
Router# configure terminal

Router(config)# interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0
Router(config-if)# ip address 10.0.0.1 255.0.0.0
Router(config-if)# no shut
Router(config-if)# exit

Router(config)# interface ucse 1/0/1
Router(config-if)# ip unnumbered GigabitEthernet0/0/0
Router(config-if)# no shut
Router(config-if)# exit

Router(config)# ucse subslot 1/0
Router(config-ucse)# imc ip address 10.0.0.2 255.0.0.0 default-gateway 10.0.0.1
Router(config-ucse)# imc access-port shared-lom gel
Router(config-ucse)# exit

Router(config)# ip route 10.0.0.2 255.255.255.255 ucse 1/0/1
Router(config)# end

Router# ping 10.0.0.2
Type escape sequence to abort.
Sending 5, 100-byte ICMP Echos to 10.0.0.2, timeout is 2 seconds:
!!!!
Success rate is 100 percent (5/5), round-trip min/avg/max = 1/2/4 ms

```

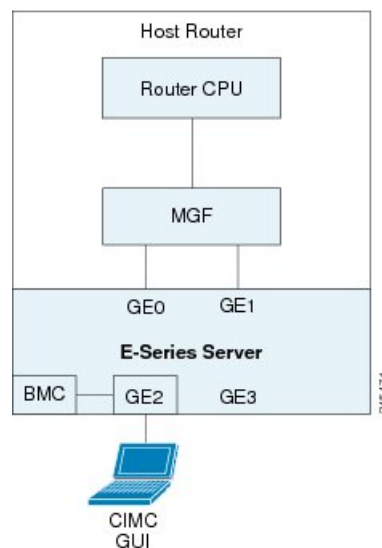
Configuring CIMC Access Using the E-Series Server's External GE2 or GE3 Interface—Cisco ISR 4000 Series

See the following figure and the procedure that follows to configure CIMC access using the E-Series Server's external GE2 or GE3 interface.



Note This figure shows how to configure CIMC access using the E-Series Server's external GE2 interface.

Figure 18: Configuring CIMC Access Using the E-Series Server's External GE2 Interface



Before you begin

Make sure that you have the following information:

- IP address of CIMC.
- Username and password for logging in to the router.
- Slot and port number of the E-Series Server.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	Router> enable	Enters privileged EXEC mode on the host router. Enter your password if prompted.
Step 2	Router# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode on the host router.
Step 3	Router (config)# ucse subslot <i>slot/subslot</i>	Enters ucse interface configuration mode for the slot and subslot where the E-Series Server is installed.
Step 4	Router (config-ucse)# imc ip address <i>cimc-ip-address subnet-mask default-gateway cimc-gateway-ip-address</i>	Specifies the IP address of CIMC and the IP address of the default gateway that CIMC must use. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>cimc-ip-address</i>—IP address of CIMC. • <i>subnet-mask</i>—Subnet mask used to append to the IP address; must be in the same subnet as the host router. • <i>cimc-gateway-ip-address</i>—IP address for the default gateway.
Step 5	Router (config-ucse)# imc access-port { GE2 GE3 } or Router (config-ucse)# imc access-port shared-lom { GE2 GE3 }	Configures CIMC access through the E-Series Server's external GE2 or GE3 interface. See # 5 and 6 in Understanding the Interfaces in an E-Series Server and the Cisco ISR 4000 Series, on page 36 . <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Use the imc access-port {GE2 GE3} command if you installed the Cisco IOS XE Release 3.9S. • Use the imc access-port shared-lom {GE2 GE3} command if you installed the Cisco IOS XE Release 3.10S and later versions.
Step 6	Router (config-ucse)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode on the host router.

Example

This example shows how to configure CIMC access using the server's external GE2 interface—Applicable only with Cisco IOS XE Release 3.9S:

```
Router> enable
Router> password
Router# configure terminal

Router(config)# ucse subslot 1/0
Router(config-ucse)# imc ip address 10.0.0.1 255.0.0.0 default-gateway 10.0.0.2
Router(config-ucse)# imc access-port GE2
Router(config-ucse)# no shut
Router(config-ucse)# end
```

This example shows how to configure CIMC access using the server's external GE2 interface—Applicable with Cisco IOS XE Release 3.10S and later releases:

```
Router> enable
Router> password
Router# configure terminal

Router(config)# ucse subslot 1/0
Router(config-ucse)# imc ip address 10.0.0.1 255.0.0.0 default-gateway 10.0.0.2
Router(config-ucse)# imc access-port shared-lom GE2
Router(config-ucse)# no shut
Router(config-ucse)# end
```

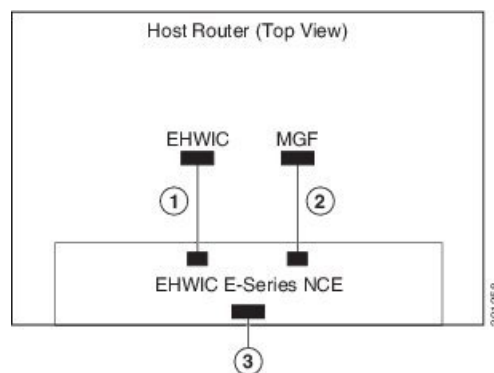
Understanding the Interfaces in the EHWIC E-Series NCE and the Cisco ISR G2



Note This section is applicable to the EHWIC E-Series NCE. This section is not applicable to the SM E-Series NCE.

The following figure shows the interfaces in the EHWIC E-Series NCE and the Cisco ISR G2 host router.

Figure 19: Interfaces in the EHWIC E-Series NCE and the Cisco ISR G2 Host Router



	Interface	Interface Location	Description
1	Router's EHWIC 0/subslot/0 Interface	Internal Interface	Also called Console interface. This interface connects the router's EHWIC interface to the EHWIC E-Series NCE. The EHWIC interface provides an internal Layer 3 GE link between the router and the EHWIC E-Series NCE. It can be used both for CIMC configuration and for host operating system configuration.
2	Router's MGF 0/subslot/1 VLAN Interface	Internal Interface	Used to access CIMC over a high-speed backplane switch. The MGF VLAN interface provides an internal Layer 2 GE link between the router and the EHWIC E-Series NCE. This interface can be used both for CIMC configuration and for host operating system configuration. Note This interface is not applicable to the Cisco 1921 ISR G2.
3	GE2 Interface	External Interface	Used as a primary interface or as a backup interface. This interface can be used both for CIMC configuration and for host operating system configuration.

CIMC Access Configuration Options—EHWIC E-Series NCE

Do one of the following to configure CIMC access.

- Use one of the following shared LOM interfaces to configure CIMC access:
 - Router's internal EHWIC **0/subslot/0** Console interface
 - Router's internal MGF **0/subslot/1** VLAN interface



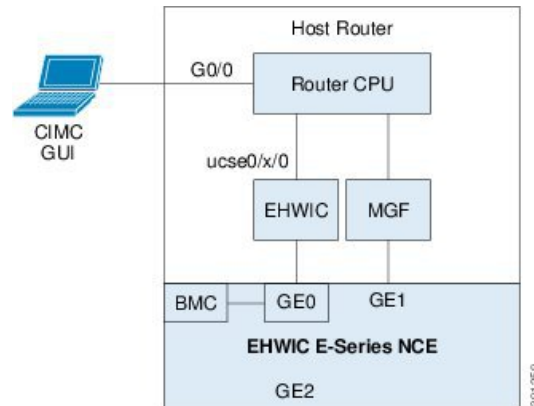
Note This interface is not applicable to the Cisco ISR 1921.

- NCE's external GE2 interface
- Use the Cisco IOS CLI to configure CIMC access.

Configuring CIMC Access Using the Router's Internal EHWIC 0/subslot/0 Console Interface—EHWIC E-Series NCE

See the following figure and the procedure that follows to configure CIMC access using the router's internal EHWIC **0/subslot/0** console interface.

Figure 20: Configuring CIMC Access Using the Router's Internal EHWIC 0/subslot/0 Console Interface



Before you begin

Make sure that you have the following information:

- IP address of CIMC.
- Username and password for logging in to the router.
- Slot or subslot and port number of the E-Series Server or NCE.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	Router> enable	Enters privileged EXEC mode on the host router. Enter your password if prompted.
Step 2	Router# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode on the host router.
Step 3	Router (config)# interface GigabitEthernet0/0	Enters interface configuration mode for Gigabit Ethernet 0/0.
Step 4	Router (config-if)# ip address <i>ip-address subnet-mask</i>	Specifies the IP address and subnet mask of the interface.
Step 5	Router (config-if)# no shut	Causes the interface to be administratively up.
Step 6	Router (config-if)# end	Exits interface configuration mode.
Step 7	Router# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode on the host router.
Step 8	Router (config)# interface ucse <i>0/subslot/port</i>	Enters interface configuration mode for the subslot and port where the NCE is installed.
Step 9	Router (config-if)# ip unnumbered <i>type number</i>	The ip unnumbered command enables IP processing on an interface without assigning an explicit IP address to that interface.

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>type</i>—Type of interface on which the router has an assigned IP address. • <i>number</i>—Number of the interface and subinterface on which the router has an assigned IP address. <p>Note The unnumbered interface must be unique. It cannot be another unnumbered interface.</p> <p>When you use the ip unnumbered command, you must use the ip route command to create a static route.</p> <p>Caution The ip unnumbered and ipv6 unnumbered commands create a point-to-point interface between devices. Broadcasting is not supported.</p>
Step 10	Router (config-if)# imc ip address <i>cimc-ip-address subnet-mask default-gateway</i> <i>cimc-gateway-ip-address</i>	<p>Specifies the IP address of CIMC and the IP address of the default gateway that CIMC must use.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>cimc-ip-address</i>—IP address of CIMC. • <i>subnet-mask</i>—Subnet mask used to append to the IP address; must be in the same subnet as the host router. • <i>cimc-gateway-ip-address</i>—IP address for the default gateway.
Step 11	Router (config-if)# imc access-port shared-lom console	Configures CIMC access using the router's EHWIC 0/slot/0 (console) interface. See # 1 in Understanding the Interfaces in the EHWIC E-Series NCE and the Cisco ISR G2, on page 50 .
Step 12	Router (config-if)# no shut	Causes the interface to be administratively up.
Step 13	Router (config-if)# end	Exits interface configuration mode.
Step 14	Router# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode on the host router.
Step 15	Router (config)# ip route <i>cimc-ip-address</i> <i>subnet-mask ucse 0/subslot/port</i>	<p>Creates a static route.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>cimc-ip-address</i>—IP address of CIMC. • <i>subslot/port</i>—Subslot and port where the NCE is installed.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 16	Router (config-if)# end	Exits interface configuration mode.
Step 17	Router# ping <i>cimc-ip-address</i>	Verifies connection from the router to CIMC through the router's internal EHWIC 0/subslot/0 console interface.

Example

This example shows how to configure CIMC access using the server's internal EHWIC **0/subslot/0** console interface:

```
Router> enable
Router> password
Router# configure terminal

Router(config)# interface GigabitEthernet0/0
Router(config-if)# ip address 10.0.0.1 255.0.0.0
Router(config-if)# no shut
Router(config-if)# end

Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# interface ucse 0/3/0
Router(config)# ip unnumbered GigabitEthernet0/0
Router(config-if)# imc ip address 10.0.0.2 255.0.0.0 default-gateway 10.0.0.1
Router(config-if)# imc access-port shared-lom console
Router(config-if)# no shut
Router(config)# end

Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# ip route 10.0.0.2 255.255.255.255 ucse 0/3/0
Router(config)# end

Router# ping 10.0.0.2
Type escape sequence to abort.
Sending 5, 100-byte ICMP Echos to 10.0.0.2, timeout is 2 seconds:
!!!!
Success rate is 100 percent (5/5), round-trip min/avg/max = 1/2/4 ms
```

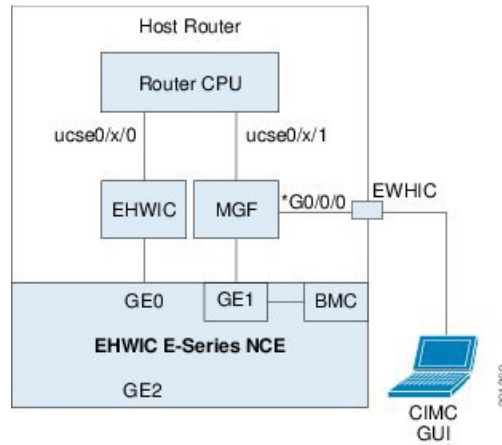
Configuring CIMC Access Using the Router's Internal MGF 0/subslot/1 VLAN Interface—EHWIC E-Series NCE



Important This procedure is not applicable to the Cisco 1921 ISR G2.

See the following figure and the procedure that follows to configure CIMC access using the router's internal MGF **0/subslot/1** VLAN interface.

Figure 21: Configuring CIMC Access Using the Router's Internal MGF 0/subslot/1 VLAN Interface



Before you begin

Make sure that you have the following information:

- IP address of CIMC.
- Username and password for logging in to the router.
- Slot or subslot and port number of the E-Series Server or NCE.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	Router> enable	Enters privileged EXEC mode on the host router. Enter your password if prompted.
Step 2	Router# show vlan-switch	Displays VLANs.
Step 3	Router# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode on the host router.
Step 4	Router (config)# interface vlan <i>vlan-number</i>	Enters interface configuration mode for the specified VLAN number.
Step 5	Router (config-if)# ip address <i>vlan-ip-address</i> <i>subnet-mask</i>	Specifies the IP address for the VLAN. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>vlan-ip-address</i>—IP address of the VLAN. • <i>subnet-mask</i>—Subnet mask to append to the IP address.
Step 6	Router (config-if)# end	Exits interface configuration mode.
Step 7	Router# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode on the host router.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 8	Router (config)# interface ucse 0/subslot0	Enters ucse interface configuration mode for the subslot and port where the NCE is installed.
Step 9	Router (config-if)# imc ip address <i>cimc-ip-address subnet-mask default-gateway</i> <i>cimc-gateway-ip-address</i>	Specifies the IP address of CIMC and the IP address of the default gateway that CIMC must use. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>cimc-ip-address</i>—IP address of CIMC. • <i>subnet-mask</i>—Subnet mask used to append to the IP address; must be in the same subnet as the host router. • <i>cimc-gateway-ip-address</i>—IP address for the default gateway.
Step 10	Router (config-if)# imc access-port shared-lom GE1	Configures CIMC access using the router's internal 0/subslot/1 MGF VLAN interface. See # 2 in Understanding the Interfaces in the EHWIC E-Series NCE and the Cisco ISR G2, on page 50 .
Step 11	Router (config-if)# no shut	Causes the interface to be administratively up.
Step 12	Router (config-if)# end	Exits interface configuration mode.
Step 13	Router# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode on the host router.
Step 14	Router (config)# interface ucse 0/subslot1	Enters ucse interface configuration mode for the subslot and port where the NCE is installed.
Step 15	Router (config-if)# no shut	Causes the interface to be administratively up.
Step 16	Router (config-if)# end	Exits interface configuration mode.
Step 17	Router# ping cimc-ip-address	Verifies connection from the router to CIMC through the router's internal MGF 0/subslot/1 VLAN interface.

Example

This example shows how to configure CIMC access using the router's internal MGF 0/subslot/1 VLAN interface:

```
Router> enable
Router> password
Router> show vlan-switch
VLAN Name                Status    Ports
-----
1    default                active   Gi0/0/0, Gi0/0/1, Gi0/0/2
                                         Gi0/0/3, uc0/3/1
```

```

Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# interface vlan 1
Router(config-if)# ip address 10.0.0.1 255.0.0.0
Router(config-if)# end

Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# interface ucse 0/3/0
Router(config-if)# imc ip address 10.0.0.2 255.0.0.0 default-gateway 10.0.0.1
Router(config-if)# imc access-port shared-lom GE1
Router(config-if)# no shut
Router(config-if)# end

Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# interface ucse 0/3/1
Router(config-if)# no shut
Router(config-if)# end

Router# ping 10.0.0.2
Type escape sequence to abort.
Sending 5, 100-byte ICMP Echos to 10.0.0.2, timeout is 2 seconds:
!!!!
Success rate is 100 percent (5/5), round-trip min/avg/max = 1/2/4 ms

```

Configuring CIMC Access Using the EHWIC E-Series NCE's External GE2 Interface



Important

If you are using the external GE2 interface on an EHWIC E-Series NCE or the NIM E-Series NCE to configure CIMC access, to configure CIMC access, you might lose connectivity with CIMC during server reboot. This is expected behavior. If you must maintain connectivity with CIMC during a reboot, we recommend that you use one of the other network interfaces to configure CIMC access. See [CIMC Access Configuration Options—EHWIC E-Series NCE, on page 51](#).

If you want to use the external GE2 interface to configure CIMC access, we recommend that you use the **spanning-tree portfast** command. For details, see the CSCup50049 caveat in the *Release Notes for Cisco UCS E-Series Servers and the Cisco UCS E-Series Network Compute Engine*.

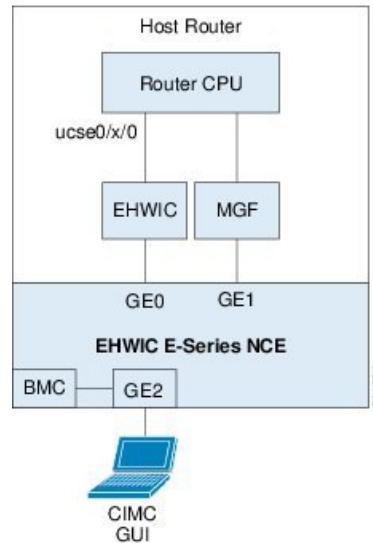
See the following figure and the procedure that follows to configure CIMC access using the EHWIC E-Series NCE's external GE2 interface.



Note

This figure shows how to configure CIMC access using the EHWIC E-Series NCE's external GE2 interface.

Figure 22: Configuring CIMC Access Using the EHWIC E-Series NCE's External GE2 Interface



Before you begin

Make sure that you have the following information:

- IP address of CIMC.
- Username and password for logging in to the router.
- Slot or subslot and port number of the E-Series Server or NCE.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	Router> enable	Enters privileged EXEC mode on the host router. Enter your password if prompted.
Step 2	Router# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode on the host router.
Step 3	Router (config)# interface ucse 0/subslot/port	Enters ucse interface configuration mode for the subslot and port where the NCE is installed.
Step 4	Router (config-if)# imc ip address <i>cimc-ip-address subnet-mask default-gateway</i> <i>cimc-gateway-ip-address</i>	Specifies the IP address of CIMC and the IP address of the default gateway that CIMC must use. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>cimc-ip-address</i>—IP address of CIMC. • <i>subnet-mask</i>—Subnet mask used to append to the IP address; must be in the same subnet as the host router. • <i>cimc-gateway-ip-address</i>—IP address for the default gateway.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 5	Router (config-if)# imc access-port shared-lom GE2	Configures CIMC access through the EHWIC E-Series NCE's external GE2 interface. See # 3 in Understanding the Interfaces in the EHWIC E-Series NCE and the Cisco ISR G2 , on page 50.
Step 6	Router (config-if)# no shut	Causes the interface to be administratively up.
Step 7	Router (config-if)# end	Exits interface configuration mode.

Example

This example shows how to configure CIMC access using the EHWIC E-Series NCE external GE2 interface:

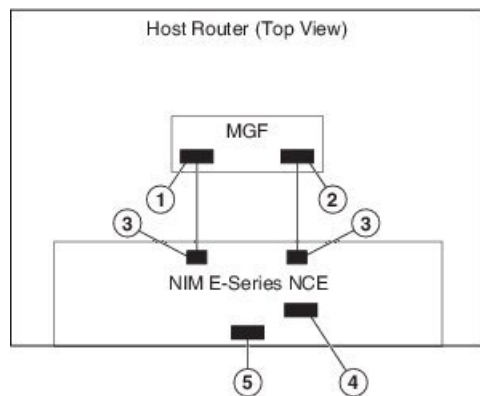
```
Router> enable
Router> password
Router# configure terminal

Router(config)# interface ucse 0/3/0
Router(config-if)# imc ip address 10.0.0.1 255.0.0.0 default-gateway 10.0.0.2
Router(config-if)# imc access-port shared-lom GE2
Router(config-if)# no shut
Router(config-if)# end
```

Understanding the Interfaces in the NIM E-Series NCE and the Cisco ISR 4000 Series

The following figure shows the interfaces in a NIM E-Series NCE and the Cisco ISR 4000 series host router.

Figure 23: Interfaces in a NIM E-Series NCE



Interface	Interface Location	Description
-----------	--------------------	-------------

1	Router's ucse 0/subslot/0 Interface	Internal Interface	Used to access CIMC over a high-speed backplane switch. The MGF interface provides an internal Layer 2 GE link between the router and the NIM E-Series NCE. This interface can be used both for CIMC configuration and for host operating system configuration. Note This interface is used to access the NIM E-Series NCE's internal GE0 interface.
2	Router's ucse 0/subslot/1 Interface	Internal Interface	Used to access CIMC over a high-speed backplane switch. The MGF interface provides an internal Layer 2 GE link between the router and the NIM E-Series NCE. This interface can be used both for CIMC configuration and for host operating system configuration. Note This interface is used to access the NIM E-Series NCE's internal GE1 interface.
3	GE0 and GE1 Interfaces	Internal Interfaces	NIM E-Series NCE's internal NIC interfaces.
4	Management (Dedicated) Interface	External Interface	Used for CIMC configuration and management.
5	GE2 Interface	External Interface	Can be used both for CIMC configuration and for host operating system configuration.

CIMC Access Configuration Options—NIM E-Series NCE

Depending on whether you are a remote user or a local user, do one of the following to configure CIMC access.

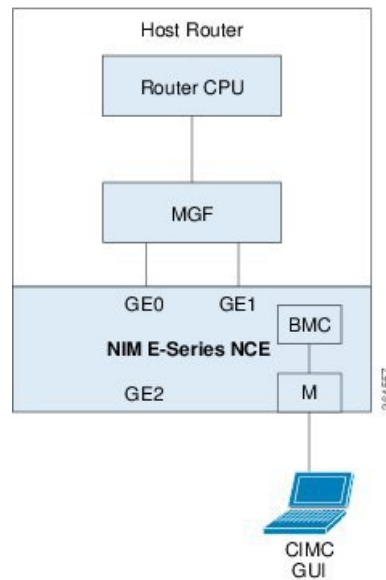
- If you are a remote user, use the Cisco IOS CLI to configure CIMC access by using one of the following interfaces:
 - CIMC Management (dedicated) interface
 - NIM E-Series NCE's internal GE0 and the router's **ucse 0/subslot/0** interface
 - NIM E-Series NCE's internal GE1 interface and the router's **ucse 0/subslot/1** interface
 - NIM E-Series NCE's external GE2 interface

- If you are a local user, use the CIMC Configuration Utility or the Cisco IOS CLI (mentioned above) to configure CIMC access.

Configuring CIMC Access Using the NIM E-Series NCE's External Management (Dedicated) Interface—Cisco ISR 4000 Series

See the following figure and the procedure that follows to configure CIMC access using the NIM E-Series NCE's external Management (dedicated) interface.

Figure 24: Configuring CIMC Access Using the NIM E-Series NCE's External Management (Dedicated) Interface



Before you begin

Make sure that you have the following information:

- IP address of CIMC.
- Username and password for logging in to the router.
- Slot or subslot and port number of the E-Series Server or NCE.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	Router> enable	Enters privileged EXEC mode on the host router. Enter your password if prompted.
Step 2	Router# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode on the host router.
Step 3	Router (config)# ucse subslot slots/subslot	Enters ucse interface configuration mode for the slot and subslot where the NIM E-Series NCE is installed.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 4	Router (config-ucse)# imc ip address <i>cimc-ip-address subnet-mask default-gateway</i> <i>cimc-gateway-ip-address</i>	Specifies the IP address of CIMC and the IP address of the default gateway that CIMC must use. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>cimc-ip-address</i>—IP address of CIMC. • <i>subnet-mask</i>—Subnet mask used to append to the IP address; must be in the same subnet as the host router. • <i>cimc-gateway-ip-address</i>—IP address for the default gateway.
Step 5	Router (config-ucse)# imc access-port dedicated	Configures CIMC access through the server's external Management (dedicated) interface. See # 4 in Understanding the Interfaces in the NIM E-Series NCE and the Cisco ISR 4000 Series , on page 59.
Step 6	Router (config-ucse)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode on the host router.

Example

This example shows how to configure CIMC access using the server's external dedicated interface:

```
Router> enable
Router> password
Router# configure terminal

Router(config)# ucse subslot 0/1
Router(config-ucse)# imc ip address 10.0.0.1 255.0.0.0 default-gateway 10.0.0.2
Router(config-ucse)# imc access-port dedicated
Router(config-ucse)# end
```

Configuring CIMC Access Using the NIM E-Series NCE's NIC Interfaces—Cisco ISR 4000 Series

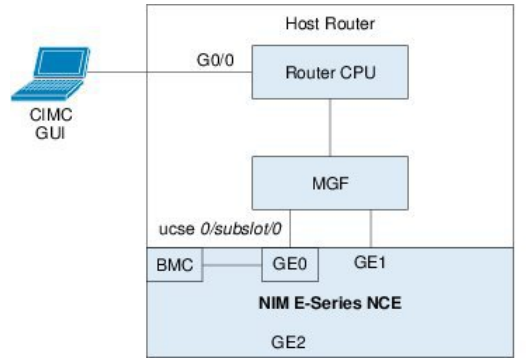
Use one of the following NIM E-Series NCE's NIC interfaces to access CIMC:

- NIM E-Series NCE's internal GE0 and the router's **ucse 0/subslot/0** Interface interface
- NIM E-Series NCE's internal GE1 interface and the router's **ucse 0/subslot/1** interface
- NIM E-Series NCE's external GE2 interface

Configuring CIMC Access Using the NIM E-Series NCE's Internal GE0 Interface and the Cisco ISR 4000 Series ucse 0/subslot/0 Interface

See the following figure and the procedure that follows to configure CIMC access using the NIM E-Series NCE's internal GE0 interface and the router's **ucse 0/subslot/0** interface.

Figure 25: Configuring CIMC Access Using the NIM E-Series NCE's Internal GE0 Interface and the Router's ucse 0/subslot/0 Interface



Before you begin

Make sure that you have the following information:

- IP address of CIMC.
- Username and password for logging in to the router.
- Slot or subslot and port number of the E-Series Server or NCE.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	Router> enable	Enters privileged EXEC mode on the host router. Enter your password if prompted.
Step 2	Router# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode on the host router.
Step 3	Router (config)# interface GigabitEthernet 0/0/0	Enters interface configuration mode for Gigabit Ethernet interface 0/0/0.
Step 4	Router (config-if)# ip address ip-address subnet-mask	Specifies the IP address and subnet mask of the interface.
Step 5	Router (config-if)# no shut	Causes the interface to be administratively up.
Step 6	Router (config-if)# exit	Exits interface configuration mode.
Step 7	Router (config)# interface ucse 0/subslot/0	Enters ucse interface configuration mode for the slot, subslot, and port where the NIM E-Series NCE is installed.
Step 8	Router (config-if)# ip unnumbered type number	The ip unnumbered command enables IP processing on an interface without assigning an explicit IP address to that interface. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>type</i>—Type of interface on which the router has an assigned IP address.

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <i>number</i>—Number of the interface and subinterface on which the router has an assigned IP address. <p>Note The unnumbered interface must be unique. It cannot be another unnumbered interface.</p> <p>When you use the ip unnumbered command, you must use the ip route command to create a static route.</p> <p>Caution The ip unnumbered and ipv6 unnumbered commands create a point-to-point interface between devices. Broadcasting is not supported.</p>
Step 9	Router (config-if)# no shut	Causes the interface to be administratively up.
Step 10	Router (config-if)# exit	Exits interface configuration mode.
Step 11	Router (config)# ucse subslot slot/subslot	Enters ucse interface configuration mode for the slot and subslot where the NIM E-Series NCE is installed.
Step 12	Router (config-ucse)# imc ip address <i>cimc-ip-address subnet-mask default-gateway</i> <i>cimc-gateway-ip-address</i>	Specifies the IP address of CIMC and the IP address of the default gateway that CIMC must use. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <i>cimc-ip-address</i>—IP address of CIMC. <i>subnet-mask</i>—Subnet mask used to append to the IP address; must be in the same subnet as the host router. <i>cimc-gateway-ip-address</i>—IP address for the default gateway.
Step 13	Router (config-ucse)# imc access-port shared-lom console	Configures CIMC access using the NIM E-Series NCE's internal GE0 interface. See # 3 in Understanding the Interfaces in the NIM E-Series NCE and the Cisco ISR 4000 Series, on page 59 .
Step 14	Router (config-ucse)# exit	Exits ucse interface configuration mode.
Step 15	Router (config)# ip route <i>cimc-ip-address</i> <i>subnet-mask ucse slot/subslot/port</i>	Creates a static route. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <i>cimc-ip-address</i>—IP address of CIMC. <i>slot/subslot/port</i>—Slot, subslot, and port where the NIM E-Series NCE is installed.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 16	Router (config)# end	Exits configuration mode.
Step 17	Router# ping cimc-ip-address	Verifies the connection from the router to CIMC through the ucse 0/subslot/0 interface.

Example

This example shows how to configure CIMC access using the NIM E-Series NCE's internal console interface and the router's **ucse 0/subslot/0** interface:

```
Router> enable
Router> password
Router# configure terminal

Router(config)# interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0
Router(config-if)# ip address 10.0.0.1 255.0.0.0
Router(config-if)# no shut
Router(config-if)# exit

Router(config)# interface ucse 0/1/0
Router(config-if)# ip unnumbered GigabitEthernet0/0/0
Router(config-if)# no shut
Router(config-if)# exit

Router(config)# ucse subslot 0/1
Router(config-ucse)# imc ip address 10.0.0.2 255.0.0.0 default-gateway 10.0.0.1
Router(config-ucse)# imc access-port shared-lom console
Router(config-ucse)# exit

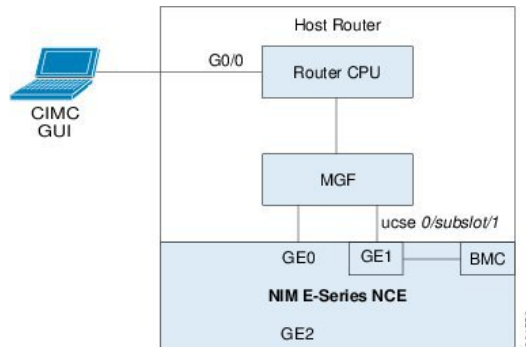
Router(config)# ip route 10.0.0.2 255.255.255.255 ucse 0/1/0
Router(config)# end

Router# ping 10.0.0.2
Type escape sequence to abort.
Sending 5, 100-byte ICMP Echos to 10.0.0.2, timeout is 2 seconds:
!!!!
Success rate is 100 percent (5/5), round-trip min/avg/max = 1/2/4 ms
```

Configuring CIMC Access Using the NIM E-Series NCE's Internal GE1 Interface and the Cisco ISR 4000 Series ucse 0/subslot/1 Interface

See the following figure and the procedure that follows to configure CIMC access using the NIM E-Series NCE's internal GE1 interface and the router's **ucse 0/subslot/1** interface.

Figure 26: Configuring CIMC Access Using the NIM E-Series NCE's Internal GE1 Interface and the Router's ucse 0/subslot/1 Interface



Before you begin

Make sure that you have the following information:

- IP address of CIMC.
- Username and password for logging in to the router.
- Slot or subslot and port number of the E-Series Server or NCE.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	Router> enable	Enters privileged EXEC mode on the host router. Enter your password if prompted.
Step 2	Router# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode on the host router.
Step 3	Router (config)# interface GigabitEthernet 0/0/0	Enters interface configuration mode for Gigabit Ethernet interface 0/0/0.
Step 4	Router (config-if)# ip address <i>ip-address subnet-mask</i>	Specifies the IP address and subnet mask of the interface.
Step 5	Router (config-if)# no shut	Causes the interface to be administratively up.
Step 6	Router (config-if)# exit	Exits interface configuration mode.
Step 7	Router (config)# interface ucse 0/subslot/1	Enters ucse interface configuration mode for the slot, subslot, and port where the NIM E-Series NCE is installed.
Step 8	Router (config-if)# ip unnumbered <i>type number</i>	The ip unnumbered command enables IP processing on an interface without assigning an explicit IP address to that interface. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>type</i>—Type of interface on which the router has an assigned IP address.

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <i>number</i>—Number of the interface and subinterface on which the router has an assigned IP address. <p>Note The unnumbered interface must be unique. It cannot be another unnumbered interface.</p> <p>When you use the ip unnumbered command, you must use the ip route command to create a static route.</p> <p>Caution The ip unnumbered and ipv6 unnumbered commands create a point-to-point interface between devices. Broadcasting is not supported.</p>
Step 9	Router (config-if)# no shut	Causes the interface to be administratively up.
Step 10	Router (config-if)# exit	Exits interface configuration mode.
Step 11	Router (config)# ucse subslot slot/subslot	Enters ucse interface configuration mode for the slot and subslot where the NIM E-Series NCE is installed.
Step 12	Router (config-ucse)# imc ip address <i>cimc-ip-address subnet-mask default-gateway</i> <i>cimc-gateway-ip-address</i>	Specifies the IP address of CIMC and the IP address of the default gateway that CIMC must use. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <i>cimc-ip-address</i>—IP address of CIMC. <i>subnet-mask</i>—Subnet mask used to append to the IP address; must be in the same subnet as the host router. <i>cimc-gateway-ip-address</i>—IP address for the default gateway.
Step 13	Router (config-ucse)# imc access-port shared-lom ge1	Configures CIMC access using the NIM E-Series NCE's internal GE1 interface. See # 3 in Understanding the Interfaces in the NIM E-Series NCE and the Cisco ISR 4000 Series, on page 59 .
Step 14	Router (config-ucse)# exit	Exits ucse interface configuration mode.
Step 15	Router (config)# ip route <i>cimc-ip-address</i> <i>subnet-mask ucse slot/subslot/port</i>	Creates a static route. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <i>cimc-ip-address</i>—IP address of CIMC. <i>slot/subslot/port</i>—Slot, subslot, and port where the NIM E-Series NCE is installed.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 16	Router (config)# end	Exits configuration mode.
Step 17	Router# ping cimc-ip-address	Verifies the connection from the router to CIMC through the ucse 0/subslot/1 interface.

Example

This example shows how to configure CIMC access using the NIM E-Series NCE's internal GE1 interface and the router's ucse 0/subslot/1 interface:

```
Router> enable
Router> password
Router# configure terminal

Router(config)# interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0
Router(config-if)# ip address 10.0.0.1 255.0.0.0
Router(config-if)# no shut
Router(config-if)# exit

Router(config)# interface ucse 0/1/1
Router(config-if)# ip unnumbered GigabitEthernet0/0/0
Router(config-if)# no shut
Router(config-if)# exit

Router(config)# ucse subslot 0/1
Router(config-ucse)# imc ip address 10.0.0.2 255.0.0.0 default-gateway 10.0.0.1
Router(config-ucse)# imc access-port shared-lom gel
Router(config-ucse)# exit

Router(config)# ip route 10.0.0.2 255.255.255.255 ucse 0/1/1
Router(config)# end

Router# ping 10.0.0.2
Type escape sequence to abort.
Sending 5, 100-byte ICMP Echos to 10.0.0.2, timeout is 2 seconds:
!!!!
Success rate is 100 percent (5/5), round-trip min/avg/max = 1/2/4 ms
```

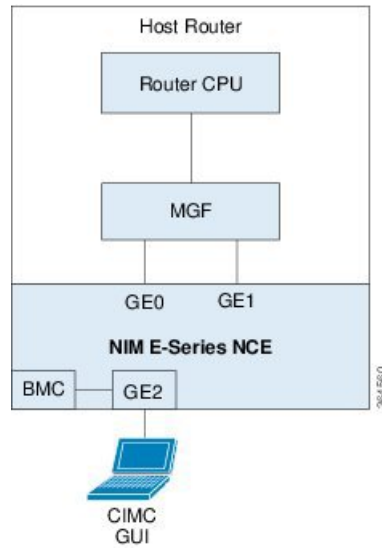
Configuring CIMC Access Using the NIM E-Series NCE's External GE2 Interface—Cisco ISR 4000 Series

See the following figure and the procedure that follows to configure CIMC access using the NIM E-Series NCE's external GE2 interface.



Note This figure shows how to configure CIMC access using the NIM E-Series NCE's external GE2 interface.

Figure 27: Configuring CIMC Access Using the NIM E-Series NCE's External GE2 Interface



Before you begin

Make sure that you have the following information:

- IP address of CIMC.
- Username and password for logging in to the router.
- Slot or subslot and port number of the E-Series Server or NCE.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	Router> enable	Enters privileged EXEC mode on the host router. Enter your password if prompted.
Step 2	Router# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode on the host router.
Step 3	Router (config)# ucse subslot slots/subslot	Enters ucse interface configuration mode for the slot and subslot where the NIM E-Series NCE is installed.
Step 4	Router (config-ucse)# imc ip address cimd-ip-address subnet-mask default-gateway cimd-gateway-ip-address	Specifies the IP address of CIMC and the IP address of the default gateway that CIMC must use. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>cimd-ip-address</i>—IP address of CIMC. • <i>subnet-mask</i>—Subnet mask used to append to the IP address; must be in the same subnet as the host router.

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <i>cimc-gateway-ip-address</i>—IP address for the default gateway.
Step 5	Router (config-ucse)# imc access-port shared-lom {GE2}	Configures CIMC access through the NIM E-Series NCE's external GE2 interface. See # 5 and 6 in Understanding the Interfaces in the NIM E-Series NCE and the Cisco ISR 4000 Series, on page 59 .
Step 6	Router (config-ucse)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode on the host router.

Example

This example shows how to configure CIMC access using the server's external GE2 interface:

```
Router> enable
Router> password
Router# configure terminal

Router(config)# ucse subslot 0/1
Router(config-ucse)# imc ip address 10.0.0.1 255.0.0.0 default-gateway 10.0.0.2
Router(config-ucse)# imc access-port shared-lom GE2
Router(config-ucse)# no shut
Router(config-ucse)# end
```

Configuring CIMC Access Using the CIMC Configuration Utility



Note This procedure is applicable to E-Series Servers and the SM E-Series NCE. This procedure is not applicable to the EHWIC E-Series NCE and the NIM E-Series NCE.

If you are a local user, you can use either the Cisco IOS CLI or the CIMC Configuration Utility to configure CIMC access.



Note When you use the CIMC Configuration Utility to configure CIMC access, the configuration is not reflected as a Cisco IOS configuration. In other words, if you execute the **show running-config** command from the Cisco IOS CLI, the changes that you made using the CIMC Configuration Utility are not reflected.

Procedure

- Step 1** Power on the router.
- Step 2** Connect a keyboard and monitor to the front panel of the E-Series Server.

- Step 3** Press the **Power** button to boot the E-Series Server. During bootup, watch for the prompt to press **F8**.
- Step 4** When you see the prompt, press **F8**.
The **CIMC Configuration Utility** appears.
- Step 5** Use the CIMC configuration Utility to set the NIC mode and NIC redundancy, and to choose whether to enable DHCP or set static network settings.
- From the **NIC mode** area, choose a port to access CIMC. Options are:
 - Dedicated—The 10/100 IMC port is used to access CIMC.
 - Shared LOM (default)—The four 1Gb Ethernet ports are used to access the CIMC. This is the factory default setting.
 - From the **NIC redundancy** area, choose the NIC redundancy. Options are:
 - None—The Ethernet ports operate independently and do not fail over if there is a problem.
 - Active-standby—If an active Ethernet port fails, the traffic falls over to a standby port. This is the factory default setting.
 - From the **IPV4 (Basic)** area, do one of the following:
 - DHCP Enabled—Select this option to enable DHCP for dynamic network settings. Before you enable DHCP, your DHCP server must be preconfigured with the range of MAC addresses for this server. The MAC address is printed on a label on the rear of the server. This server has a range of six MAC addresses assigned to CIMC. The MAC address printed on the label is the beginning of the range of six contiguous MAC addresses.
 - CIMC IP—IP address of CIMC.
 - Subnet Mask—Enter the subnet mask to append to the CIMC IP address; must be in the same subnet as the host router.
 - Gateway—IP address of the default gateway router.
 - (Optional) From the **VLAN (Advanced)** area, configure VLAN settings.
 - Press **F5** to refresh the page and have the new settings appear.
The page refresh takes approximately 45 seconds.
 - Press **F10** to save your settings and reboot the server.
If you chose to enable DHCP, the dynamically assigned IP and MAC addresses are displayed on the console screen during bootup.
- Step 6** Using the ports that you selected for the NIC Mode settings in Step 5, substep a, connect Ethernet cables from your LAN to the E-Series Server.
- Step 7** In your web browser, enter the IP address that you configured to access CIMC. The CIMC IP address is based upon the settings that you configured in Step 5, substep c (either a static IP address or the IP address assigned by your DHCP server).
The default username to log in to CIMC is **admin**, and the default password is **password**.
- Step 8** Use the CIMC GUI or CIMC CLI to manage and monitor the server.

See the *GUI Configuration Guide for Cisco UCS E-Series Servers and the Cisco UCS E-Series Network Compute Engine* or the *CLI Configuration Guide for Cisco UCS E-Series Servers and the Cisco UCS E-Series Network Compute Engine*.

Defining Network Static Settings Using a Script File

Use this procedure to define static network settings for multiple servers by automating the configuration process with a script file.

Procedure

- Step 1** Use a text editor to create a file named **network.cfg**.
- Step 2** Create the contents of **network.cfg** in the following format by using only the tags that you want to set:

```
dhcp-enabled:
v4-addr:
v4-netmask:
v4-gateway:
vlan-enabled:
vlan-id:
vlan-priority:
password:
mode:
redundancy:
```

For example, to disable DHCP, set the IP address, subnet mask, gateway, and user password, use the following sample values:

```
dhcp-enabled: 0
v4-addr: 10.193.70.102
v4-netmask: 255.255.255.0
v4-gateway: 10.193.70.1
password: nonpasswd
mode:
redundancy:
```

- Step 3** Use a text editor to create a file named **startup.nsh** with the following contents:

```
fs0:
cimcconfig
```

- Step 4** Copy your **network.cfg** file and your **startup.nsh** file to a USB thumb drive.
- Step 5** Insert the USB thumb drive into a USB port on the server.
- Step 6** Press and release the **Power** button to boot the server.
- Step 7** Observe the booting process and press **F6** when prompted to enter the BIOS Boot Manager.
- Step 8** Select EFI as the boot device and then press **Enter**.

The server power-cycles and launches the configuration utility, which runs the **startup.nsh** file. Any errors are displayed on the screen and on an **errors.txt** file.

- Step 9** Remove the USB thumb drive, alter the **network.cfg** file with your next IP address, and then insert the USB thumb drive into the next server that you want to configure.
- Step 10** After the server has been assigned an IP address, you can use that address to access the service processor's GUI or CLI management system.
-

What to Do Next

Do one of the following as appropriate:

- If you purchased an E-Series Server or NCE Option 1 (E-Series Server or NCE without a preinstalled operating system or hypervisor), log in to the CIMC GUI or the CIMC CLI to access CIMC. See [Accessing the Management Firmware, on page 75](#).
- If you purchased an E-Series Server or NCE Option 2 (E-Series Server or NCE with a preinstalled Microsoft Windows Server) or Option 3 (E-Series Server or NCE with a preinstalled VMware vSphere Hypervisor), configure an internal connection between the router and the E-Series Server or NCE. Do one of the following:
 - If you *do not want* the traffic to your application or operating system to flow through the router, use the server's host operating system to configure the E-Series Server's or NCE's external interface.
 - If you *want* the traffic to your application or operating system to flow through the router, use the Cisco IOS CLI to configure an internal connection between the router and the E-Series Server or NCE. See [Configuring a Connection Between the Router and the E-Series Server or NCE, on page 115](#).



CHAPTER 5

Accessing the Management Firmware

This chapter includes the following sections:

- [CIMC Overview, on page 75](#)
- [Logging In to the CIMC GUI, on page 76](#)
- [CIMC Home Page, on page 78](#)
- [What to Do Next, on page 78](#)

CIMC Overview

The Cisco Integrated Management Controller (CIMC) is the management service for the E-Series M6 Servers. CIMC runs within the server. You can use a web-based GUI or the SSH-based CLI to access, configure, administer, and monitor the server.

You can use CIMC to perform the following server management tasks:

- Power on, power off, power cycle, reset, and shut down the server
- Configure the server boot order
- View server properties, router information, and chassis status.
- Manage remote presence
- Create and manage local user accounts, and enable remote user authentication through the Active Directory.
- Configure network-related settings, including NIC properties, IPv4, VLANs, and network security.
- Configure communication services, including HTTP, SSH, IPMI over LAN, SNMP, and Redfish.
- Manage certificates
- Configure platform event filters
- Monitor power supply, fan, temperature, voltage, current, LED and storage sensors.
- Update CIMC firmware
- Update BIOS firmware
- Install the host image from an internal repository
- Monitor faults, alarms, and server status

- Set time zone and view local time.
- Collect technical support data in the event of server failure

Most tasks can be performed in either the GUI interface or CLI interface, and the results of tasks performed in one interface are displayed in another. However, you *cannot*:

- Use the CIMC GUI to invoke the CIMC CLI
- View a command that has been invoked through the CIMC CLI in the CIMC GUI
- Generate CIMC CLI output from the CIMC GUI

CIMC GUI

The CIMC GUI is a web-based management interface for E-Series Servers and the NCE. You can launch the CIMC GUI and manage the server from any remote host that meets the following minimum requirements:

- Java 1.6 or later
- HTTP and HTTPS enabled
- Adobe Flash Player 10 or later

CIMC CLI

The CIMC CLI is a command-line management interface for E-Series M6 Servers. You can launch the CIMC CLI in the following ways:

- By the serial port.
- Over the network by SSH.
- From the router. Use one of the following commands as appropriate:
 - **hw-module subslot slot/subslot session imc**—Use for E-Series Servers installed in a Cisco Catalyst 8300 Edge Series platform.

A CLI user can have one of the three roles: admin, user (can control but cannot configure), and read-only.

Logging In to the CIMC GUI

Before you begin

- Make sure that you have configured the IP address to access CIMC.
- If not installed, install Adobe Flash Player 10 or later on your local machine.

Procedure

- Step 1** In your web browser, enter the IP address that you configured to access CIMC during initial setup.
- Step 2** If a security dialog box displays, do the following:
- a) (Optional) Check the check box to accept all content from Cisco.
 - b) Click **Yes** to accept the certificate and continue.
- Step 3** In the log in window, enter your username and password.
- Tip** When logging in for the first time to an unconfigured system, use **admin** as the username and **password** as the password.
- Step 4** Click **Log In**.
- The **Change Password** dialog box appears.
- Note** The **Change Password** dialog box only appears the first time you log into CIMC. It does not appear for subsequent reboots.
- Step 5** In the **New Password** field, enter your new password.
- Step 6** In the **Confirm Password** field, enter the password again to confirm it.
- Step 7** Click **Save Changes**.
- The **Server Summary** page appears, which is the CIMC home page. See [CIMC Home Page, on page 78](#).
-

CIMC Home Page

Figure 28: CIMC Home Page

The screenshot shows the Cisco Integrated Management Controller (CIMC) Home Page. The page is titled "Cisco Integrated Management Controller" and shows the user "admin@192.168.164.70 - E160S-FOC20091NAS". The page is divided into several sections:

- Server Properties:**
 - Product Name: E160S
 - Serial Number: FOC20091NAS
 - PID: UCS-E160S-M3/K9
 - UUID: A89D21FC-650C-0000-D719-30E7E3C41835
 - BIOS Version: UCSEM3_2.6 (Build Date: 07/12/2018)
 - Description:
 - Asset Tag:
- Cisco Integrated Management Controller (Cisco IMC) Information:**
 - Hostname: E160S-FOC20091NAS
 - IP Address: 192.168.164.42
 - MAC Address: A8:9D:21:FC:65:0E
 - Firmware Version: 3.2(4.20180206163853)
 - CPLD Version: 4.0
 - Hardware Version: 2
 - Current Time (UTC): Fri Jul 13 01:27:34 2018
 - Local Time: Fri Jul 13 01:27:34 2018 UTC +0000
 - Timezone: UTC [Select Timezone](#)
- Router Information:**
 - Router Model: ISR4351/K9
 - Serial Number: FDO1826A01D
 - Slot Number: Service Module slot 1
- Chassis Status:**
 - Power State: ● On
 - Overall Server Status: ✔ Good
 - Overall DIMM Status: ✔ Good
 - Overall Storage Status: ✔ Good

Navigation options include Refresh, Host Power, Launch KVM, Ping, Reboot, and help icons. A vertical ID number "367547" is visible on the right side of the page.

What to Do Next

If you purchased E-Series Server Option 1 (E-Series Server without a preinstalled operating system or hypervisor), configure RAID. See [Managing Storage Using RAID](#), on page 79.



Note The RAID feature is applicable to E-Series Servers and the SM E-Series NCE. The RAID feature is not applicable to the EHWIC E-Series NCE and the NIM E-Series NCE.



CHAPTER 6

Managing Storage Using RAID



Note If you purchased E-Series Server Option 1 (E-Series Server without a preinstalled operating system or hypervisor), and you want to store data files on local Redundant Array of Inexpensive Disks (RAID), you must configure RAID.



Important The RAID feature is applicable to E-Series Servers and the SM E-Series NCE. The RAID feature is not applicable to the EHWIC E-Series NCE and the NIM E-Series NCE.

This chapter includes the following sections:

- [RAID Options, on page 79](#)
- [Configuring RAID, on page 82](#)

RAID Options



Note The RAID feature is applicable to E-Series Servers and the SM E-Series NCE. The RAID feature is not applicable to the EHWIC E-Series NCE and the NIM E-Series NCE.

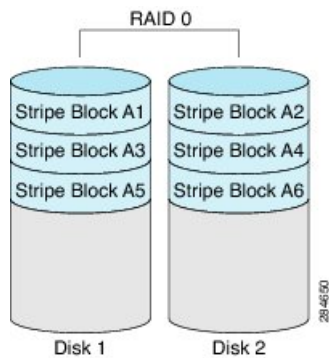
You can choose to store the E-Series Server data files on local Redundant Array of Inexpensive Disks (RAID). The following RAID levels are supported:

- The single-wide E-Series Server supports RAID 0 and RAID 1 levels.
- The double-wide E-Series Server supports RAID 0, RAID 1, and RAID 5 levels.
- The double-wide E-Series Server with the PCIe option supports RAID 0 and RAID 1 levels.

RAID 0

With RAID 0, the data is stored evenly in stripe blocks across one or more disk drives without redundancy (mirroring). The data in all of the disk drives is different.

Figure 29: RAID 0



Compared to RAID 1, RAID 0 provides additional storage because both disk drives are used to store data. The performance is improved because the read and write operation occurs in parallel within the two disk drives.

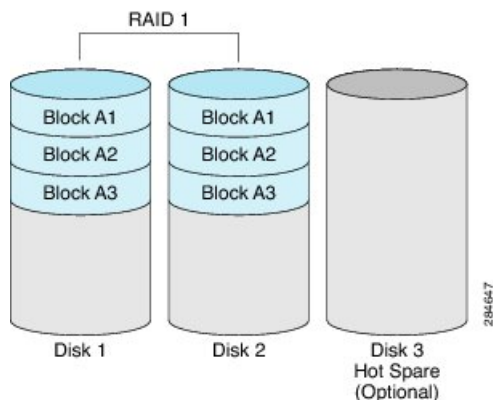
However, there is no fault tolerance, error checking, hot spare, or hot-swapping. If one disk drive fails, the data in the entire array is destroyed. Because there is no error checking or hot-swapping, the array is susceptible to unrecoverable errors.

RAID 1

RAID 1 creates a mirrored set of disk drives, where the data in both the disk drives is identical, providing redundancy and high availability. If one disk drive fails, the other disk drive takes over, preserving the data.

RAID 1 also allows you to use a hot spare disk drive. The hot spare drive is always active and is held in readiness as a hot standby drive during a failover.

Figure 30: RAID 1



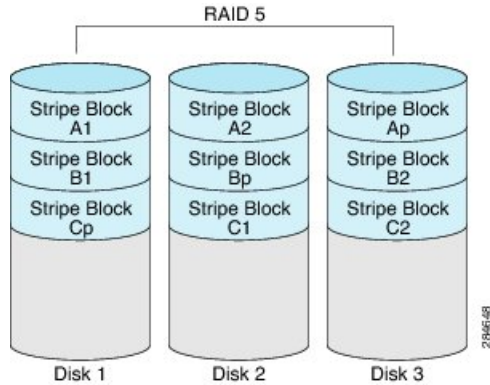
RAID 1 supports fault tolerance and hot-swapping. When one disk drive fails, you can remove the faulty disk drive and replace it with a new disk drive.

However, compared to RAID 0, there is less storage space because only half of the total potential disk space is available for storage and there is an impact on performance.

RAID 5

With RAID 5, the data is stored in stripe blocks with parity data staggered across all disk drives, providing redundancy at a low cost.

Figure 31: RAID 5



RAID 5 provides more data storage capacity than RAID 1 and better data protection than RAID 0. It also supports hot swapping; however, RAID 1 offers better performance.

RAID 10

RAID 10, a combination of RAID 0 and RAID 1, consists of striped data across mirrored spans. A RAID 10 drive group is a spanned drive group that creates a striped set from a series of mirrored drives. RAID 10 allows a maximum of eight spans. You must use an even number of drives in each RAID virtual drive in the span. The RAID 1 virtual drives must have the same stripe size. RAID 10 provides high data throughput and complete data redundancy but uses a larger number of spans.



Note RAID 10 is supported on DoubleWide M3 servers.

Non-RAID

When the disk drives of a computer are not configured as RAID, the computer is in non-RAID mode. Non-RAID mode is also referred to as Just a Bunch of Disks or Just a Bunch of Drives (JBOD). Non-RAID mode does not support fault tolerance, error checking, hot-swapping, hot spare, or redundancy.

Summary of RAID Options

RAID Option	Description	Advantages	Disadvantages
RAID 0	Data stored evenly in stripe blocks without redundancy	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Better storage • Improved performance 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • No error checking • No fault tolerance • No hot-swapping • No redundancy • No hot spare

RAID 1	Mirrored set of disk drives and an optional hot spare disk drive	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • High availability • Fault tolerance • Hot spare • Hot-swapping 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Less storage • Performance impact
RAID 5	Data stored in stripe blocks with parity data staggered across all disk drives	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Better storage efficiency than RAID 1 • Better fault tolerance than RAID 0 • Low cost of redundancy • Hot-swapping 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Slow performance
Non-RAID	Disk drives not configured for RAID Also referred to as JBOD	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Portable 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • No error checking • No fault tolerance • No hot-swapping • No redundancy • No hot spare

Configuring RAID

You can choose to store the E-Series Server data files on local Redundant Array of Inexpensive Disks (RAID). The following RAID levels are supported:

- The single-wide E-Series Server supports RAID 0 and RAID 1 levels.
- The double-wide E-Series Server supports RAID 0, RAID 1, and RAID 5 levels.
- The double-wide E-Series Server with the PCIe option supports RAID 0 and RAID 1 levels.



Note On Cisco UCS M1 and M2 servers, you can use the CIMC GUI or the WebBIOS, which is accessible from the KVM console, to configure RAID. On Cisco UCS M3 servers, you can use the CIMC GUI or the MegaRAID controller, which is accessible from the KVM console, to configure RAID.

Configuring RAID Using the CIMC GUI

Use this procedure to configure the RAID level, strip size, host access privileges, drive caching, and initialization parameters on a virtual drive. You can also use this procedure to designate the drive as a hot spare drive and to make the drive bootable.

Procedure

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** menu.
- Step 2** On the **Server** tab, click **Inventory**.
- Step 3** In the **Inventory** pane, click the **Storage** tab.
- Step 4** To configure RAID, make sure that the status of each of the physical drives that you want to configure as RAID is **unconfigured good**. To change the physical drive status, do the following:
- In the tabbed menu of the **Storage Card** area, click the **Physical Drive Info** tab.

Figure 32: Physical Drive Info Tab

The screenshot displays the Cisco Integrated Management Controller (CIMC) GUI. The top bar shows the Cisco logo and the text "Cisco Integrated Management Controller". On the right, it indicates the user is logged in as "admin@10.21.169.85". The left navigation pane shows "Server" and "Inventory" selected. The main content area is titled "Storage Cards" and has tabs for "CPUs", "Memory", "Power Supplies", "Storage", and "PCI Adapters". The "Storage" tab is active, showing "Storage Adapters" and "Storage Card: SLOT-5". Under "Storage Card: SLOT-5", there are tabs for "Controller Info", "Physical Drive Info", and "Virtual Drive Info". The "Physical Drive Info" tab is selected, displaying a table of physical drives and detailed information for each.

Slot Number	State	Mode	Type	Coerced Size	Actions
1	online	RAID 0	HDD, SATA	952720 MB	
2	online	RAID 0	HDD, SAS	205148 MB	

Below the table, there are sections for "General" and "Inquiry Data".

General

- Enclosure Device ID: 64
- Slot Number: 1
- Power State: active
- Device ID: 0
- Sequence Number: 2
- Media Error Count: 0
- Other Error Count: 0
- Predictive Failure Count: 0
- Block Size: 512
- Block Count: 1953525168
- Raw Size: 953869 MB
- Non Coerced Size: 953357 MB
- Coerced Size: 952720 MB
- SAS Address: 0: 4433221100000000
- Link Speed: 6.0 Gb/s
- Media Type: HDD

Inquiry Data

- Vendor: ATA
- Product ID: ST91000640NS
- Drive Firmware: CC02
- Drive Serial Number: 9XG14LAA

Status

- State: online
- Fault: false
- Online: true

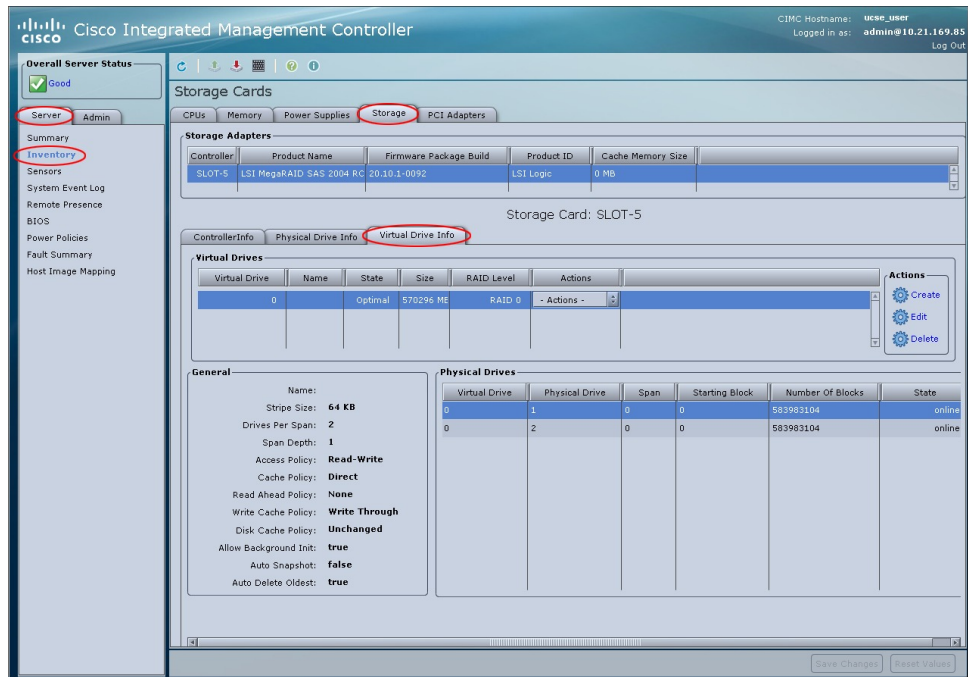
Security

- FDE Capable: false
- Security Enabled: false
- Secured by Controller: false
- FDE Locked: false
- Secured by Foreign Key: false
- Secured by EKMS: false

- From the **Actions** column in the **Physical Drives** pane, choose **Set State** from the drop-down list. The **Change Physical Drive State** dialog box appears.
- From the **Change Physical Drive State to** drop-down list, choose **unconfigured good**, and then click **Confirm**.

- Step 5** In the tabbed menu of the **Storage Card** area, click the **Virtual Drive Info** tab.

Figure 33: Virtual Drive Info Tab



Step 6 In the **Actions** area of the **Virtual Drive Info** tab, click **Create**.

The **Configure Virtual Drive** dialog box appears. Complete the following fields as appropriate:

Name	Description
RAID Level drop-down list	<p>The RAID level options. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • RAID 0—Block striping. • RAID 1—Mirroring. • RAID 5—Block striping with parity. <p>Note The single-wide E-Series Server supports RAID 0 and RAID 1 levels. The double-wide E-Series Server supports RAID 0, RAID 1, and RAID 5 levels. The double-wide E-Series Server with PCIe option supports RAID 0 and RAID 1 levels.</p>
Unconfigured Drives table	Displays the drives that are unconfigured and available for RAID configuration.
Add >	Moves the selected drives from the Unconfigured Drives table to the Selected Drives table.
< Remove	Removes the selected drives from the Selected Drives table.
Selected Drives table	Displays the drives that are selected for RAID configuration.

Step 7 Click Next.

The **Configure RAID Parameters** dialog box appears. Complete the following fields as appropriate:

Name	Description
Strip Size drop-down list	<p>The strip size options. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 64 KB • 32 KB • 16 KB • 8 KB <p>Caution The smaller strip sizes have a known problem with VMware vSphere Hypervisor™ installation; therefore, if you are installing the vSphere platform, we recommend that you select the 64 KB strip size option.</p>
Access Policy drop-down list	<p>Configures host access privileges. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Read-Write—The host has full access to the drive. • Read Only—The host can only read data from the drive. • Blocked—The host cannot access the drive.
Drive Cache drop-down list	<p>How the controller handles drive caching. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Unchanged—The controller uses the caching policy specified on the drive. This is the default and recommended option. • Enable—Caching is enabled on the drives. This option minimizes the delay in accessing data. <p>Caution Enabling Drive Cache, voids all warranty on the hard disk drives. This configuration option is not supported. Use this option at your own risk.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Disable—Caching is disabled on the drives.

Name	Description
Initialization drop-down list	<p>How the controller initializes the drives. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Quick—Controller initializes the drive quickly. This is the default and recommended option. <p>Note If you are using SSD drives, we recommend that you choose the Quick initialization option.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Full—Controller does a complete initialization of the new configuration. <p>Note Depending on the size of the drives, Full initialization can take several hours to complete.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • None—Controller does not initialize the drives.
HSP check-box	<p>Designates the drive as a hot spare drive.</p> <p>Note Applicable for RAID 1 only.</p>
Set Bootable check-box	<p>How the controller boots the drive. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Enable—Makes this drive bootable. • Disable—This drive is not bootable. <p>Note If you plan to install an operating system or Hypervisor into the RAID array, we recommend that you check this check-box.</p>

Step 8 Click **Next**.

The **Confirm RAID Configuration** dialog box appears.

Step 9 Review the RAID configuration, and then click **Submit** to accept the changes.

Configuring RAID



Note On Cisco UCS M1 and M2 servers, you can use the CIMC GUI or the WebBIOS, which is accessible from the KVM console, to configure RAID. On Cisco UCS M3 servers, you can use the CIMC GUI or the MegaRAID controller, which is accessible from the KVM console, to configure RAID.

Use this procedure to configure the RAID level, strip size, host access privileges, drive caching, and initialization parameters on a virtual drive. You can also use this procedure to designate the drive as a hot spare drive and to make the drive bootable.

Procedure

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** menu.
- Step 2** On the **Server** tab, click **RAID**. Do one of the following:
- If the **Configure Virtual Drive** dialog box does not appear, proceed to the next step.
 - If the **Configure Virtual Drive** dialog box appears, and the virtual drives are not configured, complete the fields as shown in Step 5.
- Step 3** In the tabbed menu of the **Storage Cards** area, click the **Virtual Drive Info** tab.
- Step 4** In the **Actions** area of the **Virtual Drive Info** tab, click **Create**.
- Step 5** Complete the following fields as appropriate:

Name	Description
Available Drives table	Displays the drives that are available for RAID configuration. Note To move a drive, click and drag a drive to the appropriate table.
Selected Drives table	Displays the drives that are selected for RAID configuration. Note To move a drive, click and drag a drive to the appropriate table.
RAID Level drop-down list	The RAID level options. This can be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • RAID 0—Block striping. • RAID 1—Mirroring. • RAID 5—Block striping with parity. Note The single-wide E-Series Server supports RAID 0 and RAID 1 levels. The double-wide E-Series Server supports RAID 0, RAID 1, and RAID 5 levels. The double-wide E-Series Server with the PCIe option supports RAID 0 and RAID 1 levels.
Name field	The name of the virtual drive. Enter a maximum of 15 characters. The characters can have numbers and upper- or lower-case letters. Special characters are not supported.
Strip Size drop-down list	The strip size options. This can be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 64 KB • 32 KB • 16 KB • 8 KB

Name	Description
<p>Initialization drop-down list</p>	<p>How the controller initializes the drives. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Quick—The controller initializes the drive quickly. This is the default and recommended option. • Full—The controller does a complete initialization of the new configuration. <p>Note Depending on the size of the drives, full initialization can take several hours to complete. To view the progress, see the Initialize Progress and Initialize Time Elapsed fields in the General area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • None—The controller does not initialize the drives.
<p>Drive Cache drop-down list</p>	<p>How the controller handles drive caching. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Disable—Caching is disabled on the drives. <p>Note This is the default and recommended option.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Unchanged—The controller uses the caching policy specified on the drive. This is the default and recommended option. • Enable—Caching is enabled on the drives. This option minimizes the delay in accessing data. <p>Caution Enabling Drive Cache, voids all warranty on the hard disk drives. This configuration option is not supported. Use this option at your own risk.</p>
<p>Access Policy drop-down list</p>	<p>Configures host access privileges. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Read-Write—The host has full access to the drive. • Read Only—The host can read only data from the drive. • Blocked—The host cannot access the drive.
<p>Set this Virtual Drive Bootable check box</p>	<p>How the controller boots the drive. This can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Enable—The controller makes this drive bootable. • Disable—This drive is not bootable. <p>Note If you plan to install an operating system or hypervisor into the RAID array, we recommend that you check this check box.</p>

Name	Description
Use the Remaining Drive as Hot Spare check box	Designates the drive that is in the Available Drives table as a hot spare drive. Note Applicable for RAID 1 only. This check box is greyed out for other RAID levels. Applicable for double-wide E-Series Servers.

Step 6 Review the RAID configuration, and then click **Confirm** to accept the changes.

Configuring RAID Using the WebBIOS



Important The RAID feature is applicable to E-Series Servers and the SM E-Series NCE. The RAID feature is not applicable to the EHWIC E-Series NCE and the NIM E-Series NCE.



Note Use WebBIOS to configure RAID on M1 and M2 servers. Use MegaRAID controller to configure RAID on M3 servers. See [Configuring RAID Using the MegaRAID Controller, on page 89](#)

Procedure

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** menu.
- Step 2** In the work pane, click **Host Image Mapping** tab.
- Step 3** From the **Actions** area, click **Launch KVM Console**.
The **KVM Console** opens in a separate window.
- Step 4** From the **Server Summary** page, click **Power Cycle Server** to reboot the server.
- Step 5** Press the **Ctrl** key, and then press **H** during bootup to access the WebBIOS.
The **Adapter Selection** page from LSI Logic appears, which allows you to configure RAID. For information about this page, see the LSI Logic documentation.

Configuring RAID Using the MegaRAID Controller



Important The RAID feature is applicable to E-Series Servers and the SM E-Series NCE. The RAID feature is not applicable to the EHWIC E-Series NCE and the NIM E-Series NCE.

Procedure

-
- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** menu.
- Step 2** In the work pane, click **Host Image Mapping** tab.
- Step 3** From the **Actions** area, click **Launch KVM Console**.
The **KVM Console** opens in a separate window.
- Step 4** From the **Server Summary** page, click **Power Cycle Server** to reboot the server.
- Step 5** Press the **Ctrl** key, and then press **R** during bootup to access the MegaRAID Controller.
The **Virtual Drive Management** page appears, which allows you to configure MegaRAID Controller.
-

Configuring RAID Using the Cisco IOS CLI

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	Router> enable	Enters privileged EXEC mode on the host router. Enter your password if prompted.
Step 2	Router# ucse slot server raid level {none 0 1 5} use hard drive list	Configures the RAID level on the specified hard drive. Caution When you use this command, all existing data in the hard drive is lost.
Step 3	At the confirmation prompt, enter y .	Proceeds with the RAID configuration process.
Step 4	Router# show ucse slot server raid level	(Optional) Displays the RAID configuration.

Example

This example shows how to configure RAID using the Cisco IOS CLI.

```
Router> enable
Router> password
Router# ucse 1 server raid level 1 use HDD1 HDD2
You are about to change RAID configuration.
It will destroy all data on the hard drives
Are you sure [y/n] y

RAID reconfigured
Router# show ucse 1 server raid level
md0 : active raid1 HDD1 [1] HDD2 [0]
      10337728 blocks [2/2] [UU]
JBOD: HDD3
```

What to Do Next

If you purchased E-Series Server or NCE Option 1 (E-Series Server or NCE without a preinstalled operating system or hypervisor), install the operating system. See [Installing the Operating System or Hypervisor](#), on page 93.



CHAPTER 7

Installing the Operating System or Hypervisor



Note If you purchased E-Series Server or NCE Option 1 (E-Series Server or NCE without a preinstalled operating system or hypervisor), you must install an operating system or hypervisor.

This chapter includes the following sections:

- [Operating System or Hypervisor Installation Methods, on page 93](#)
- [KVM Console, on page 94](#)
- [PXE Installation Servers, on page 96](#)
- [Host Image Mapping, on page 97](#)
- [Basic Workflow for Downloading and Installing the VMware vSphere Hypervisor, on page 102](#)
- [Downloading and Installing the Operating System Using the Cisco IOS CLI, on page 105](#)
- [Configuring the Server Boot Order, on page 106](#)
- [What to Do Next, on page 114](#)

Operating System or Hypervisor Installation Methods

E-Series Servers and NCE support several operating systems and hypervisors. Regardless of the platform being installed, you can install it on your server using one of the following methods:

- KVM console
- PXE installation server
- Host image mapping



Caution You must use only one method to map virtual drives. For example, you must use either the KVM console or the Host Image Mapping method. Using a combination of methods will cause the server to be in an undefined state.

KVM Console

The KVM console is an interface accessible from the CIMC that emulates a direct keyboard, video, and mouse connection to the server. The KVM console allows you to connect to the server from a remote location. Instead of using CD/DVD or floppy drives physically connected to the server, the KVM console uses virtual media, which are actual disk drives or disk image files that are mapped to virtual CD/DVD or floppy drives. You can map any of the following to a virtual drive:

- CD/DVD or floppy drive on your computer
- Disk image files (ISO or IMG files) on your computer
- USB flash drive on your computer

You can use the KVM console to install an operating system or hypervisor on the server and to do the following:

- Access the BIOS setup menu by pressing **F2** during bootup.
- Access the CIMC Configuration Utility by pressing **F8** during bootup.

Installing an Operating System or Hypervisor Using the KVM Console

Before you begin

Locate the operating system or hypervisor installation disk or disk image file.



Note The VMware vSphere Hypervisor requires a customized image. To download the customized image, see [Downloading the Customized VMware vSphere Hypervisor Image, on page 103](#).

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Load the operating system or hypervisor installation disk into your CD/DVD drive, or copy the disk image files to your computer.
 - Step 2** If CIMC is not open, log into the CIMC GUI.
 - Step 3** From the top menu, click **Launch KVM**.
 - Step 4** From the **Launch KVM** menu, click **Java Based KVM**.
The **KVM Console** opens in a separate window.
 - Step 5** From the KVM console, click the **Virtual Media** tab.

```

PciRoot(0x0)/Pci(0x1D,0x0)/USB(0x0,0x0)/USB(0x2,0x0)/Unit(0x3)/CDROM(0x1
,0x235,0x33F040)
b1k0 :Removable CDRom - Alias cd38a0c0d1 fs0
PciRoot(0x0)/Pci(0x1D,0x0)/USB(0x0,0x0)/USB(0x2,0x0)/Unit(0x3)/CDROM(0x1
,0x235,0x33F040)
b1k1 :Removable CDRom - Alias (null)
PciRoot(0x0)/Pci(0x1D,0x0)/USB(0x0,0x0)/USB(0x2,0x0)/Unit(0x3)/CDROM(0x0
,0x233,0x0)
b1k2 :Removable BlockDevice - Alias (null)
PciRoot(0x0)/Pci(0x1D,0x0)/USB(0x0,0x0)/USB(0x2,0x0)
b1k3 :Removable BlockDevice - Alias (null)
PciRoot(0x0)/Pci(0x1D,0x0)/USB(0x0,0x0)/USB(0x2,0x0)/Unit(0x1)
b1k4 :Removable BlockDevice - Alias (null)
PciRoot(0x0)/Pci(0x1D,0x0)/USB(0x0,0x0)/USB(0x2,0x0)/Unit(0x2)
b1k5 :Removable BlockDevice - Alias (null)
PciRoot(0x0)/Pci(0x1D,0x0)/USB(0x0,0x0)/USB(0x2,0x0)/Unit(0x3)
b1k6 :Removable BlockDevice - Alias (null)
PciRoot(0x0)/Pci(0x1D,0x0)/USB(0x0,0x0)/USB(0x2,0x0)/Unit(0x4)
b1k7 :Removable BlockDevice - Alias (null)
PciRoot(0x0)/Pci(0x1D,0x0)/USB(0x0,0x0)/USB(0x3,0x0)

Press ESC in 1 seconds to skip startup.nsh, any other key to continue.
Shell>
Shell>
Shell> _

```

367550

- Step 6** In the **Virtual Media** tab, click **Activate Virtual Devices**
- Step 7** Select **Accept this Session** and then click **Apply** .
- Step 8** Click the **Virtual Media** tab and click **Map CD/DVD**.
- Step 9** Click **Browse**, navigate to and select the operating system or hypervisor installation disk image. Click **Open** to mount the disk image, and then check the **Mapped** check box for the mounted disk image in the **Virtual Media** tab.
- Step 10** Set the boot order to make the virtual CD/DVD drive as the boot device.
- Step 11** Reboot the server.
- When the server reboots, it begins the installation process from the virtual CD/DVD drive. Refer to the platform installation guide for the installation process.
- Step 12** If the disk drives are not displayed after you install the operating system or hypervisor, you must install drivers. See the appropriate operating system or hypervisor documentation for instructions on how to install drivers. For instructions on how to install drivers on a Microsoft Windows operating system, see [Installing Drivers for the Microsoft Windows Server, on page 99](#).

What to do next

After the installation is complete, reset the virtual media boot order to its original setting.

PXE Installation Servers

A Preboot Execution Environment (PXE) installation server allows a client to boot and install an operating system or hypervisor from a remote location. To use this method, a PXE environment must be configured and available on your VLAN, typically a dedicated provisioning VLAN. In addition, the server must be set to boot from the network. When the server boots, it sends a PXE request across the network. The PXE installation server acknowledges the request, and starts a sequence of events that installs the operating system or hypervisor on the server.

PXE servers can use installation disks, disk images, or scripts to install the operating system or hypervisor. Proprietary disk images can also be used to install the platform, additional components, or applications.



Note PXE installation is an efficient method for installing a platform on a large number of servers. However, considering that this method requires setting up a PXE environment, it might be easier to use another installation method.

Installing an Operating System or Hypervisor Using a PXE Installation Server

Before you begin

Verify that the server can be reached over a VLAN.

Procedure

Step 1 Set the boot order to **PXE**.

Step 2 Reboot the server.

Caution If you are using the shared LOM interfaces to access CIMC, make sure that you do not use the CIMC GUI during the server reboot process. If you use the CIMC GUI, the GUI will disconnect during PXE installation as the boot agent overrides the IP address that was previously configured on the Ethernet ports.

If a PXE install server is available on the VLAN, the installation process begins when the server reboots. PXE installations are typically automated and require no additional user input. Refer to the installation guide for the operating system or hypervisor being installed to guide you through the rest of the installation process.

What to do next

After the installation is complete, reset the LAN boot order to its original setting.

Host Image Mapping

The Host Image Mapping feature allows you to download, map, unmap, or delete a host image. Download a host image, such as Linux, or VMware from a remote FTP or HTTP server onto the CIMC internal repository, and then map the image onto the virtual drive of a USB controller in the E-Series M6 Servers. After you map the image, set the boot order to make the virtual drive, in which the image is mounted, as the first boot device, and then reboot the server. The host image must have .iso or .img as the file extension.

Mapping the Host Image

Before you begin

- Log in to CIMC as a user with admin privileges.
- Obtain the host image file from the appropriate third party.



Note The VMware vSphere Hypervisor requires a customized image. To download the customized image, see [Downloading the Customized VMware vSphere Hypervisor Image, on page 103](#).



Note If you start an image update while an update is already in process, both updates will fail.

Procedure

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** menu.
- Step 2** On the **Server** tab, click **Host Image Mapping**.
- Step 3** From the **Host Image Mapping** page, click **Add Image**.

The **Download Image** dialog box opens. Complete the following fields:

Name	Description
Download Image From drop-down list	The type of remote server on which the image is located. This can be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FTP • HTTP <p>Note Depending on the remote server that you select, the fields that display change.</p>
FTP or HTTP Server IP Address field	The IP address of the remote FTP or HTTP server.

Name	Description
FTP or HTTP File Path field	<p>The path and filename of the remote FTP or HTTP server.</p> <p>The path and filename can contain up to 80 characters.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If you are installing a host image, that image must have .iso or .img as the file extension. • If you are installing a diagnostics image, that image must have .diag as the file extension.
Username field	<p>The username of the remote server.</p> <p>The username can contain 1 to 20 characters.</p> <p>Note If the username is not configured, enter anonymous for the username and any character(s) for the password.</p>
Password field	<p>The password for the username.</p> <p>The password can contain 1 to 20 characters.</p> <p>Note If the username is not configured, enter anonymous for the username and any character(s) for the password.</p>

Step 4 Click **Download**.

The **Host Image Mapping** page opens. You can view the status of the image download in the **Host Image Mapping Status** area. After the image is downloaded and processed successfully, refresh the page. After the page refreshes, the new image displays in the **Image Information** area.

Step 5 From the **Image Information** area, select the image to map, and then click **Map Selected Image**.

The image is mapped and mounted on the virtual drive of a USB controller. The virtual drive can be one of the following:

- HDD—Hard disk drive
- FDD—Floppy disk drive
- CD/DVD—Bootable CD-ROM or DVD drive

Step 6 Set the boot order to make the virtual drive in which the image is mounted as the first boot device.

Tip To determine in which virtual drive the image is mounted, see the **Host Image Update Status** area in the **Host Image Mapping** page.

Step 7 Reboot the server.**Step 8** If the image contains an answer file, the operating system or hypervisor installation is automated and the image is installed. Otherwise, the installation wizard is displayed. Follow the wizard steps to install the image.**Step 9** If disk drives are not displayed after you install the operating system or hypervisor, you must install drivers. See the appropriate operating system or hypervisor documentation for instructions on how to install drivers.

For instructions on how to install drivers on a Microsoft Windows operating system, see [Installing Drivers for the Microsoft Windows Server, on page 99](#).

What to do next

- After the installation is complete, reset the virtual media boot order to its original setting.
- Unmap the host image. See [Unmapping the Host Image, on page 101](#).

Installing Drivers for the Microsoft Windows Server



Note If you purchased an E-Series Server or NCE Option 1 (E-Series Server or NCE without a preinstalled operating system or hypervisor), and you installed your own version of the Microsoft Windows Server, you must install drivers.

The Microsoft Windows operating system requires that you install the following drivers:

- On-Board Network Drivers for Windows 2008 R2
- LSI Drivers (On-Board Hardware RAID Controller) for Windows 2008 R2
- Intel Drivers for Windows 2008 R2
- [Intel Server Chipset Driver for Windows](#)
- [Intel Network Adapter Driver for Windows Server 2012 R2](#)



Note The driver 'Intel Network Adapter Driver for Windows Server 2012 R2' is applicable only for the following servers:

- UCS-E160S-M3 Server
 - UCS-EN140N-M2 Server
 - UCS-EN120E-M2 Server
 - UCS-E180D-M3/K9 Server
 - UCS-E1120D-M3/K9 Server
-



Note Additional drivers are not needed for Windows 2012.

If you have purchased a 10-Gigabit add-on card, you must also install the 10G PCIe Network Drivers for Windows 2008 R2.

Procedure

- Step 1** Download the drivers from Cisco.com. See [Obtaining Software from Cisco Systems, on page 100](#).
- Step 2** Copy the driver files into a USB flash drive.
- Step 3** Install your own version of Microsoft Windows Server.
During the installation process, you will be prompted for the LSI Drivers.
- Step 4** Plug the USB flash drive into the USB slot in the E-Series Server and then install the LSI Drivers.
This step is applicable to E-Series Servers and the SM E-Series NCE. This step is not applicable to the EHWIC E-Series NCE and the NIM E-Series NCE.
- Step 5** After the Microsoft Windows Server installation is complete, install the On-Board Network Drivers (Broadcom) and the Intel Drivers.
-

Obtaining Software from Cisco Systems

Use this procedure to download BIOS and CIMC firmware.

Procedure

- Step 1** Navigate to <http://www.cisco.com/>.
- Step 2** If you are not already logged in, click **Log In** at the top right-hand edge of the page and log in using your Cisco.com credentials.
- Step 3** In the menu bar at the top, click **Support**.
A roll-down menu appears.
- Step 4** From the Downloads (center) pane, click **All Downloads** (located at the bottom right corner).
The **Download Software** page appears.
- Step 5** From the left pane, click **Products**.
- Step 6** From the center pane, click **Unified Computing and Servers**.
- Step 7** From the right pane, click **Cisco UCS E-Series Software**.
- Step 8** From the right pane, click the name of the server model for which you want to download the software.
The **Download Software** page appears with the following categories.
- **Unified Computing System (UCSE) Server Firmware**—Contains the Host Upgrade Utility.
- Step 9** Click the appropriate software category link.
- Step 10** Click the **Download** button associated with software image that you want to download.
The **End User License Agreement** dialog box appears.
- Step 11** (Optional) To download multiple software images, do the following:
- a) Click the **Add to cart** button associated with the software images that you want to download.
 - b) Click the **Download Cart** button located on the top right .

All the images that you added to the cart display.

- c) Click the **Download All** button located at the bottom right corner to download all the images.

The **End User License Agreement** dialog box appears.

Step 12 Click **Accept License Agreement**.

Step 13 Do one of the following as appropriate:

- Save the software image file to a local drive.
- If you plan to install the software image from a TFTP server, copy the file to the TFTP server that you want to use.

The server must have read permission for the destination folder on the TFTP server.

What to do next

Install the software image.

Unmapping the Host Image

Before you begin

Log in to CIMC as a user with admin privileges.

Procedure

Step 1 In the Navigation pane, click the **Compute** menu.

Step 2 On the **Compute** tab, click **Host Image Mapping**.

Cisco Integrated Management Controller admin@192.168.164.70 - E180D-FOC21211SGK

Compute / Host Image Mapping

Refresh | Host Power | Launch KVM | Ping | Reboot

Host Image Mapping

Host Image Mapping Information

Status None

Mapped Image None

Current Mappings

Image Name	Image Size	MD5 Checksum	Last Modified Time
RHEL-7.4-20170711.0-Serv...	4059037696	227880f6a3c0e6b745e7f204586c8988	Fri, 08 Dec 2017 12:29:47 GMT
Vmware-ESXi-6.5d.0-53105...	347625472	39c360322d9d5cd795e20483c2f6d3c2	Mon, 17 Jul 2017 08:48:13 GMT

Save Changes Reset Values

367551

Step 3 Click **Unmap Image**.

The mapped image is unmounted from the virtual drive of the USB controller.

Basic Workflow for Downloading and Installing the VMware vSphere Hypervisor



Caution If you are using the VMware FL-SRE-V-HOST license (equivalent to VMware vSphere Hypervisor 5.X), make sure that the RAM that you are using is 32 GB or less. If the RAM is more than 32 GB, you will get an error message, and you will not be able to apply the license. If you want to use 48 GB of RAM, upgrade your license to FL-SRE-V-HOSTVC.

1. Download the customized VMware vSphere Hypervisor image.
2. Install the VMware vSphere Hypervisor image.
3. Assign a static IP address to the VMware vSphere Hypervisor.
4. Download and install the vSphere Client.

Downloading the Customized VMware vSphere Hypervisor Image

Procedure

- Step 1** Navigate to <https://my.vmware.com/web/vmware/login>.
The VMware login page appears.
- Step 2** Enter your VMware credentials, and then click **Log In**.
If you do not have an account with VMware, click **Register** to create a free account.
- Step 3** Click **Downloads**, and then select **All Products** from the drop-down list.
- Step 4** Do one of the following as appropriate:
- To download the VMware vSphere Hypervisor 5.1 image, enter **ESXi-5.1.0-799733-custom-Cisco-2.1.0.3.iso** in the **Search** field, and then click the **Search** icon. From the **Search Results**, click **VMware vSphere > Drivers & Tools > Cisco Custom Image for ESXi 5.1.0 GA Install CD**, and then click **Download**.
 - To download the VMware vSphere Hypervisor 5.5 image, enter **ESXi-5.5.0-1331820-custom-Cisco-5.5.0.1.iso**, in the **Search** field, and then click the **Search** icon. From the **Search Results**, click **VMware vSphere > Drivers & Tools > CISCO Custom Image for ESXi 5.5.0 GA Install CD**, and then click **Download**.
-

What to do next

Install the VMware vSphere Hypervisor image.

Assigning a Static IP Address to the VMware vSphere Hypervisor

Use this procedure to assign a static IP address to the VMware vSphere Hypervisor.

Before you begin

- Download the customized VMware vSphere Hypervisor image. See [Downloading the Customized VMware vSphere Hypervisor Image, on page 103](#).



Note You must have an account with VMware to download the customized image.

- Install the image onto the E-Series Server or NCE. For installation instructions, see [Mapping the Host Image, on page 97](#).

Procedure

- Step 1** In your web browser, enter the IP address that you configured to access CIMC during initial setup and then log into CIMC.
- The CIMC Home page, which is the **Server Summary** page, appears.
- Step 2** From the **Actions** area of the **Server Summary** page, click the **Launch KVM Console** icon.
- The **KVM Console** opens in a separate window.
- Step 3** From the KVM console, click the **KVM** tab, and then do the following to configure the IP address:
- Press **F2** to access the VMware vSphere Hypervisor DCUI customization menu.
- The **DCUI** login page appears.
- Log into the **DCUI**.
- The **System Customization** page appears.
- From the **System Customization** page, click **Configure Management Network**.
- The **Configure Management Network** page appears, which has several menu options, including **Network Adapter**. The **Network Adapter** menu option allows you to view the existing network adapters and activate them.
- Note** By default, the network adapter, **vmnic0**, is activated. Make sure that it stays activated.
- From the **Configure Management Network** page, click the **IP Configuration** menu option.
- To assign a static IP address, do the following:
- In the **IP Configuration** dialog box, click the radio box to specify that a static IP address will be used.
 - In the appropriate fields, enter the IP address, network mask, and the gateway IP address, and then press **Enter**. The **Configure Management Network** page appears.
 - In the **Configure Management Network** page, click the **ESC** key. The **Configure Management Network Confirm** dialog box appears.
 - Enter **y** to accept the changes and restart the management network.
- In the router configuration, add a route to the VMware vSphere Hypervisor host IP address.
- For example, if the host IP address is 192.168.1.25 and the ucse interface is ucse 2/0, add the following route:
- ```
ip route 192.168.1.25 255.255.255.255 ucse2/0
```
- Install the vSphere Client. See [Downloading and Installing the vSphere Client, on page 105](#). From the vSphere Client, use the host IP address to log in to the VMware vSphere Hypervisor.
-

## Downloading and Installing the vSphere Client

### Before you begin

- Make sure that you have assigned a static IP address to the VMware vSphere Hypervisor. See [Assigning a Static IP Address to the VMware vSphere Hypervisor, on page 103](#).
- Verify that you have network connectivity. To download the vSphere Client, connection to the Internet is required.



**Note** The vSphere Client contains an online tutorial for first time users. It also contains embedded in-line getting started assistance, which allows you to set up your virtual infrastructure through an easy to use, step-by-step process. If you are an experienced user, you can choose to turn-off the getting started in-line assistance.

### Procedure

- Step 1** Go to `https://hypervisor-ip-address`. You are directed to the VMware website and the Welcome page opens.
- Step 2** Click **Download vSphere Client**, and then click **Run** to download the vSphere Client. The VMware vSphere Client is installed and a shortcut icon to the client appears on your desktop.
- Step 3** Click the **VMware vSphere Client** icon to open the login window.
- Step 4** To manage the VMware vSphere Hypervisor, enter the IP address or hostname of the VMware vSphere Hypervisor and the username and password, and then click **Login**. The vSphere Client GUI opens.

**Note** The default username for the preinstalled VMware vSphere Hypervisor is **root**, which cannot be changed; and the default password is **password** (for VMware 6.7 version, the default password is **password@123**; for VMWare 7.0 version, the default password is **Password1\$**). After you log in, we recommend that you change the password.

## Downloading and Installing the Operating System Using the Cisco IOS CLI

### Procedure

|               | Command or Action                                                                                                           | Purpose                                                                                                 |
|---------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Step 1</b> | Router> <b>enable</b>                                                                                                       | Enters privileged EXEC mode on the host router. Enter your password if prompted.                        |
| <b>Step 2</b> | Router# <b>ucse slot imc file download URL</b><br><b>ftp ftps http https:</b><br><i>server-ip-address/path/filename.iso</i> | Downloads the ISO image file from a remote FTP, FTPS, HTTP, or HTTPS server onto the local file system. |

|               | Command or Action                                                     | Purpose                                                     |
|---------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Step 3</b> | Router# <b>show ucse slot imc download progress</b>                   | (Optional) Displays the progress of the download.           |
| <b>Step 4</b> | Router# <b>ucse slot server start boot url imc-file: filename.iso</b> | Installs and boots the image file from a local file system. |

### Example

This example downloads and installs the operating system:

```
Router> enable
Router# ucse 2 imc file download URL ftp 10.20.34.56 pub/hostimage.iso
Started downloading file from ftp 10.20.34.56 pub/hostimage.iso
Router# show ucse 2 imc file download progress
Downloaded 23%
Router# ucse 2 server start boot url imc-file: hostimage.iso
```

## Configuring the Server Boot Order

You can use the CIMC GUI or the BIOS setup menu to configure the server boot order.

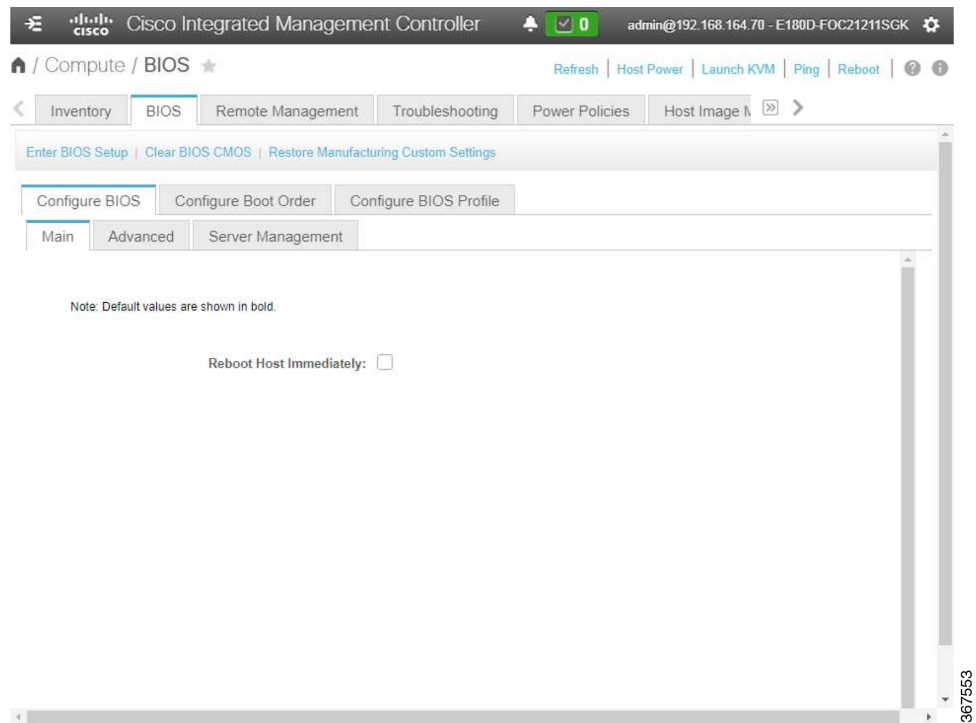
### Configuring the Server Boot Order Using the CIMC GUI

#### Before you begin

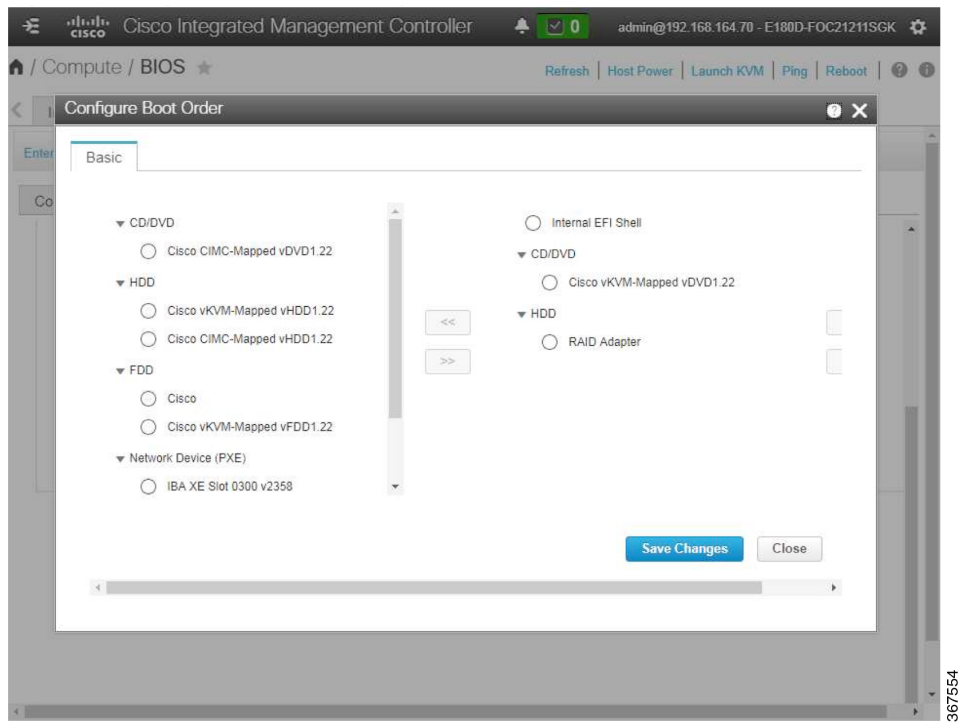
Log into CIMC as a user with admin privileges.

#### Procedure

- 
- Step 1** In the Navigation pane, click the **Compute** menu.
  - Step 2** On the **Compute** tab, click **BIOS**.



- Step 3** In the **Configure Boot Order** area, click **Configure Boot Order**.  
The **Configure Boot Order** dialog box appears.



- Step 4** In the **Configure Boot Order** dialog box, complete the following fields as appropriate:

| Name               | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|--------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Device Types table | The server boot options. This can be the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>HDD</b>—Hard disk drive.</li> <li>• <b>FDD</b>—Floppy disk drive.</li> <li>• <b>CDROM</b>—Bootable CD-ROM.</li> <li>• <b>PXE</b>—PXE boot.</li> <li>• <b>EFI</b>—Extensible Firmware Interface.</li> </ul> |
| Add >              | Moves the selected device type to the <b>Boot Order</b> table.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| < Remove           | Removes the selected device type from the <b>Boot Order</b> table.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Boot Order table   | Displays the device types from which this server can boot, in the order in which the boot will be attempted.                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Up                 | Moves the selected device type to a higher priority in the <b>Boot Order</b> table.                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Down               | Moves the selected device type to a lower priority in the <b>Boot Order</b> table.                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |

**Step 5** Click **Apply**.

Additional device types may be appended to the actual boot order, depending on what devices you have connected to your server.

---

#### What to do next

Reboot the server to boot with your new boot order.

## Configuring the Server Boot Order Using the CIMC GUI

#### Before you begin

Log into CIMC as a user with admin privileges.

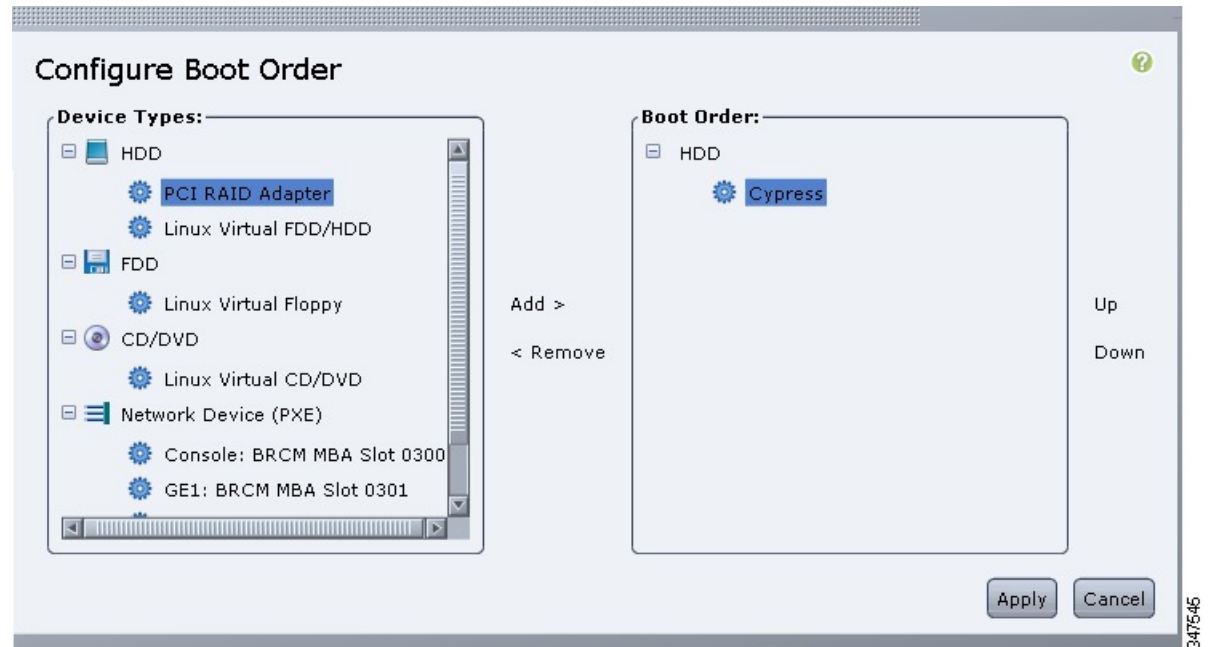
#### Procedure

---

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** menu.
- Step 2** On the **Server** tab, click **BIOS**.
- Step 3** In the **Actions** area, click **Configure Boot Order**.  
The **Configure Boot Order** dialog box appears.



Figure 34: Configure Boot Order Dialog Box



**Step 4** In the **Configure Boot Order** dialog box, complete the following fields as appropriate:

| Name                      | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|---------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Device Types table</b> | <p>The server boot options. This can be the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>HDD</b>—Hard disk drive. Contains the following options: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Cypress</b></li> <li>• <b>PCI RAID Adapter</b></li> <li>• <b>Linux Virtual FDD/HDD</b></li> <li>• <b>SSD Hard Drive</b></li> </ul> </li> <li>• <b>FDD</b>—Floppy disk drive. Contains the following option: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Linux Virtual Floppy</b></li> </ul> </li> <li>• <b>CD/DVD</b>—Bootable CD-ROM. Contains the following option: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Linux Virtual CD/DVD</b></li> </ul> </li> <li>• <b>Network Devices (PXE)</b>—PXE boot. Contains the following options: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Console</b></li> <li>• <b>GE1</b></li> <li>• <b>GE2</b></li> <li>• <b>GE3</b></li> <li>• <b>TE2</b></li> <li>• <b>TE3</b></li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> The PXE boot options vary depending on the platform. For instance, the M3 servers use TE2 and TE3 instead of GE2 and GE3.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Internal EFI Shell</b>—Internal Extensible Firmware Interface.</li> </ul> |
| <b>Add &gt;</b>           | Moves the selected device type to the <b>Boot Order</b> table.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| < <b>Remove</b>           | Removes the selected device type from the <b>Boot Order</b> table.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>Boot Order table</b>   | Displays the device types from which this server can boot, in the order in which the boot will be attempted.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <b>Up</b>                 | Moves the selected device type to a higher priority in the <b>Boot Order</b> table.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>Down</b>               | Moves the selected device type to a lower priority in the <b>Boot Order</b> table.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |

**Step 5** Click **Apply**.

Additional device types may be appended to the actual boot order, depending on what devices you have connected to your server.

---

#### What to do next

Reboot the server to boot with your new boot order.

## Configuring the Boot Order Using the BIOS Setup Menu

Use this procedure if you want the server to boot from an external bootable device, such as a USB or an external CD-ROM drive that is directly connected to the E-Series Server or NCE.

### Procedure

---

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** menu.
- Step 2** In the work pane, click **Host Image Mapping** tab.
- Step 3** From the **Actions** area, click **Launch KVM Console**.
- The **KVM Console** opens in a separate window.
- Step 4** From the **Server Summary** page, click **Power Cycle Server** to reboot the server.
- Step 5** When prompted, press **F2** during bootup to access the BIOS setup menu.
- The **Aptio Setup Utility** appears, which provides the BIOS setup menu options.
- Step 6** Click the **Boot** tab.
- Step 7** Scroll down to the bottom of the page below the **Boot Options Priority** area. The following boot option priorities are listed:
- Floppy Drive BBS Priorities
  - Network Device BBS Priorities
  - Hard Drive BBS Priorities
  - CD/DVD ROM Drive BBS Priorities
- Step 8** Use the **Up** or **Down arrow keys** on your keyboard to highlight the appropriate option.
- Step 9** Press **Enter** to select the highlighted field.
- Step 10** Choose the appropriate device as Boot Option 1.
- Step 11** Press **F4** to save changes and exit.
- The **Main** tab of the BIOS setup displays the device that you configured as Boot Option 1.
-

## Configuring the Server Boot Order Using the Cisco IOS CLI

### Procedure

|               | Command or Action                                                                    | Purpose                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|---------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Step 1</b> | Router> <b>enable</b>                                                                | Enters privileged EXEC mode on the host router. Enter your password if prompted.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <b>Step 2</b> | Router# <b>show ucse slot server boot devices</b>                                    | Displays the devices available from which you can boot the server.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>Step 3</b> | Router# <b>ucse slot server boot order device_1 [device_2] [device_3] [device_4]</b> | <p>Specifies the devices from which to boot the server.</p> <p><b>Note</b> The name of the devices must exactly match the names displayed by the output of the <b>show ucse slot server boot devices</b> command.</p> <p>The device can be any of the following, but you can only use each device name once:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>PXE</b>—PXE boot</li> <li>• <b>FDD</b>—Floppy disk drive</li> <li>• <b>HDD</b>—Hard disk drive</li> <li>• <b>CDROM</b>—Bootable CD-ROM</li> </ul> |
| <b>Step 4</b> | Router# <b>show ucse slot server boot order</b>                                      | (Optional) Displays the order in which the device boot is attempted.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |

### Example

This example configures the boot order:

```
Router> enable
Router# show ucse 2 server boot devices
PXE
FDD
HDD:HDD3
HDD:RAID-MD0
HDD:USB-FF5D6CC3DAA67F12-1
CDROM:USB-CD
Router# ucse 2 boot order PXE CDROM:USB-CD FDD HDD:RAID-MD0
Router# show ucse 2 server boot order
Currently booted from CDROM:USB-CD
Boot order:
1) PXE
2) CDROM:USB-CD
3) FDD
```

4) HDD:RAID-MD0

## Verifying Operating System and Hypervisor Installation

### Accessing the Microsoft Windows Server from CIMC

#### Before you begin

- A CIMC IP address is configured for CIMC access.
- The Microsoft Windows Server is installed on the E-Series Server.

#### Procedure

---

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** menu.
- Step 2** In the work pane, click **Host Image Mapping** tab.
- Step 3** From the **Actions** area of the **Server Summary** page, click the **Launch KVM Console** icon.  
The **KVM Console** opens in a separate window.
- Step 4** From the KVM console, access the installed Microsoft Windows Server operating system.
- 

### Accessing the VMware vSphere Hypervisor from CIMC

#### Before you begin

- A CIMC IP address is configured for CIMC access.
- The VMware vSphere Hypervisor is installed on the E-Series Server.

#### Procedure

---

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** menu.
- Step 2** In the work pane, click **Host Image Mapping** tab.
- Step 3** From the **Actions** area of the **Server Summary** page, click the **Launch KVM Console** icon.  
The **KVM Console** opens in a separate window.
- Step 4** From the KVM console, click the **KVM** tab.

The VMware vSphere Hypervisor Direct Console User Interface (DCUI) appears. If VMware vSphere Hypervisor has assigned an IP address to the host, then that IP address is displayed on the DCUI page, or you can specify a static IP address. See [Assigning a Static IP Address to the VMware vSphere Hypervisor](#), on page 103.

**Step 5** Make sure that you have installed vSphere Client. If not, install it. See [Downloading and Installing the vSphere Client, on page 105](#).

**Step 6** From the vSphere Client, log in to the VMware vSphere Hypervisor.

To log in, use either the IP address that is assigned by VMware vSphere Hypervisor or the static IP address that you specified in Step 4.

**Note** The default username for the preinstalled VMware vSphere Hypervisor is **root**, which cannot be changed, and the default password is **password** (For VMware version 7.0, the default password is **Password1\$**). After you log in, we recommend that you change the password.

---

## What to Do Next

Configure a connection between the router and the server. See [Configuring a Connection Between the Router and the E-Series Server or NCE, on page 115](#).



## CHAPTER 8

# Configuring a Connection Between the Router and the E-Series Server or NCE

---

Depending on whether you want the traffic to flow through the router or not, do one of the following:

- If you *do not want* the traffic to your application or operating system to flow through the router, use the server's host operating system to configure the E-Series Server's or NCE's external interface.
- If you *want* the traffic to your application or operating system to flow through the router, use the procedures provided in this chapter to configure an internal connection between the router and the E-Series Server or NCE.

This chapter includes the following sections:

- [Configuring an Internal Connection Between the Cisco ISR G2 and the E-Series Server, on page 115](#)
- [Configuring an Internal Connection Between the Cisco ISR 4000 Series and the E-Series Server, on page 118](#)
- [Configuring an Internal Connection Between the Cisco ISR G2 and the EHWIC E-Series NCE, on page 124](#)
- [Configuring an Internal Connection Between the Cisco ISR 4000 Series and the NIM E-Series NCE, on page 127](#)
- [Understanding Network Interface Mapping, on page 134](#)
- [Determining the MAC Address in Microsoft Windows, Linux, and VMware vSphere Hypervisor, on page 136](#)

## Configuring an Internal Connection Between the Cisco ISR G2 and the E-Series Server

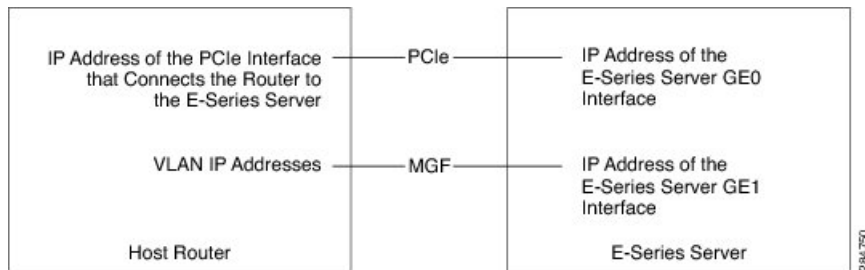
Use this configuration if you want the traffic to your application or operating system to flow through the Cisco ISR G2. To configure an internal connection between the Cisco ISR G2 and the E-Series Server, you must configure these IP addresses:

- For traffic to flow through the PCIe connection (see next figure), configure the following:
  - IP address of the router's internal PCIe interface that connects the router to the E-Series Server's GE0 interface.
  - IP address of the E-Series Server's GE0 interface.

- For traffic to flow through the MGF connection (see next figure), configure the following:
  - IP address of the router's internal MGF VLAN interface.
  - IP address of the E-Series Server's GE1 interface.

The following figure shows the internal connection between the router and the E-Series Server.

**Figure 35: Internal Connection Between the Cisco ISR G2 and the E-Series Server**



### Procedure

|               | Command or Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Purpose                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|---------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Step 1</b> | Router> <b>enable</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Enters privileged EXEC mode on the host router. Enter your password if prompted.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <b>Step 2</b> | Router# <b>configure terminal</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Enters global configuration mode on the host router.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <b>Step 3</b> | Router (config)# <b>interface ucse slot/0</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Enters interface configuration mode for the router's PCIe <i>slot/0</i> interface.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <b>Step 4</b> | Enter one of the following commands: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Router (config-if)# <b>ip address</b> <i>router-to-e-series-server-interface-ip-address subnet-mask</i></li> <li>• Router (config-if)# <b>ip unnumbered type number</b></li> </ul> | <p>The <b>ip address</b> command specifies the IP address of the router's internal PCIe interface that connects the router to the E-Series Server's GE0 interface. See the figure above.</p> <p>or</p> <p>The <b>ip unnumbered</b> command enables IP processing on an interface without assigning an explicit IP address to that interface.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>type</i>—Type of interface on which the router has an assigned IP address.</li> <li>• <i>number</i>—Number of the interface on which the router has an assigned IP address.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> The unnumbered interface must be unique. It cannot be another unnumbered interface.</p> |



|                | Command or Action                                                                                                | Purpose                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                |                                                                                                                  | <b>Caution</b> The <b>ip unnumbered</b> command creates a point-to-point interface between devices. Broadcasting is not supported.                                                                                                     |
| <b>Step 5</b>  | Router (config-if)# <b>no shut</b>                                                                               | Causes the interface to be administratively up.                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>Step 6</b>  | Router (config-if)# <b>end</b>                                                                                   | Exits interface configuration mode.                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>Step 7</b>  | Use the server's operating system to configure the E-Series Server's <b>GE0</b> interface. See the figure above. | —                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <b>Step 8</b>  | Router (config)# <b>interface ucse slot/1</b>                                                                    | Enters interface configuration mode for the router's MGF <i>slot/1</i> VLAN interface. See the figure above.                                                                                                                           |
| <b>Step 9</b>  | Router (config-if)# <b>switchport mode trunk</b>                                                                 | Puts the port into permanent trunking mode. The default configuration is access mode.                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>Step 10</b> | Router (config-if)# [ <b>switchport trunk allowed vlan</b> <i>vlan-numbers</i> ]                                 | (Optional) Allows trunking on the specified VLANs. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>vlan-numbers</i>—VLAN numbers on which to allow trunking.</li> </ul>                                                                    |
| <b>Step 11</b> | Router (config-if)# <b>exit</b>                                                                                  | Exits interface configuration mode.                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>Step 12</b> | Router# <b>configure terminal</b>                                                                                | Enters global configuration mode on the host router.                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>Step 13</b> | Router (config)# <b>interface vlan</b> <i>vlan-number</i>                                                        | Enters interface configuration mode for the specified VLAN number.                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>Step 14</b> | Router (config-if)# <b>ip address</b> <i>vlan-ip-address subnet-mask</i>                                         | Specifies the IP address for the VLAN. See the figure above. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>vlan-ip-address</i>—IP address of the VLAN.</li> <li>• <i>subnet-mask</i>—Subnet mask to append to the IP address.</li> </ul> |
| <b>Step 15</b> | Router (config-if)# <b>no shut</b>                                                                               | Causes the interface to be administratively up.                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>Step 16</b> | Router (config-if)# <b>end</b>                                                                                   | Exits interface configuration mode.                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>Step 17</b> | Use the server's operating system to configure the E-Series Server's <b>GE1</b> interface. See figure above.     | —                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |

### Example

This example shows how to configure an internal connection between the router and the E-Series Server.



**Note** The IP addresses in this configuration example are for reference only and might not be valid.

```
Router> enable
Router# configure terminal

Router(config)# interface ucse 1/0
Router(config-if)# ip address 10.0.0.1 255.0.0.0
Router(config-if)# no shut
Router(config-if)# end
```

Use the server's operating system to configure the E-Series Server's **GE0** interface

```
Router(config)# interface ucse 1/1
Router(config-if)# switchport mode trunk
Router(config-if)# exit
```

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# interface vlan 1
Router(config-if)# ip address 20.0.0.1 255.255.255.0
Router(config-if)# no shut
Router(config-if)# end
```

Use the server's operating system to configure the E-Series Server's **GE1** interface.

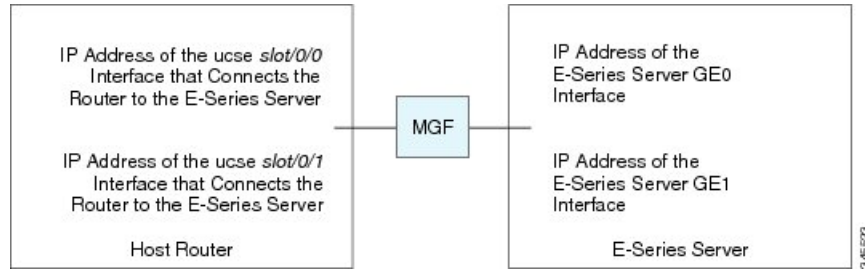
## Configuring an Internal Connection Between the Cisco ISR 4000 Series and the E-Series Server

Use this configuration if you want the traffic to your application or operating system to flow through the Cisco ISR 4000 series. To configure an internal connection between the Cisco ISR 4000 series and the E-Series Server, you must configure these IP addresses:

- For traffic to flow through the router's **ucse slot/0/0** and the E-Series Server's internal GE0 interface (see next figure), configure the following:
  - IP address of the router's **ucse slot/0/0** interface that connects the router to the E-Series Server's GE0 interface.
  - IP address of the E-Series Server's GE0 interface.
- For traffic to flow through the router's **ucse slot/0/1** and the E-Series Server's internal GE1 interface (see next figure), configure the following:
  - IP address of the router's **ucse slot/0/1** interface.
  - IP address of the E-Series Server's GE1 interface.

The following figure shows the internal connection between the router and the E-Series Server.

**Figure 36: Internal Connection Between the Cisco ISR 4000 Series and the E-Series Server**



**Procedure**

|               | <b>Command or Action</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | <b>Purpose</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|---------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Step 1</b> | Router> <b>enable</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Enters privileged EXEC mode on the host router. Enter your password if prompted.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>Step 2</b> | Router# <b>configure terminal</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Enters global configuration mode on the host router.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <b>Step 3</b> | Router (config)# <b>interface ucse slot/0/0</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Enters interface configuration mode for the router's ucse slot/0/0 interface.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>Step 4</b> | Enter one of the following commands: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Router (config-if)# <b>ip address</b> <i>router-to-e-series-server-interface-ip-address</i> <i>subnet-mask</i></li> <li>• Router (config-if)# <b>ip unnumbered</b> <i>type</i> <i>number</i></li> </ul> | Specify the IP address of the router's <b>ucse slot 0/0</b> interface that connects the router to the E-Series Server's GE0 interface. See the figure above.<br>or<br>The <b>ip unnumbered</b> command enables IP processing on an interface without assigning an explicit IP address to that interface. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>type</i>—Type of interface on which the router has an assigned IP address.</li> <li>• <i>number</i>—Number of the interface on which the router has an assigned IP address.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> The unnumbered interface must be unique. It cannot be another unnumbered interface.</p> <p><b>Caution</b> The <b>ip unnumbered</b> command creates a point-to-point interface between devices. Broadcasting is not supported.</p> |
| <b>Step 5</b> | Router (config-if)# <b>no shut</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Causes the interface to be administratively up.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |

|                | Command or Action                                                                                                | Purpose                                                                                                    |
|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Step 6</b>  | Router (config-if)# <b>end</b>                                                                                   | Exits interface configuration mode.                                                                        |
| <b>Step 7</b>  | Use the server's operating system to configure the E-Series Server's <b>GE0</b> interface. See the figure above. | —                                                                                                          |
| <b>Step 8</b>  | Router (config)# <b>interface ucse slot/0/1</b>                                                                  | Enters interface configuration mode for the router's <b>ucse slot/0/1</b> interface. See the figure above. |
| <b>Step 9</b>  | Router (config-if)# <b>no shut</b>                                                                               | Causes the interface to be administratively up.                                                            |
| <b>Step 10</b> | Router (config-if)# <b>end</b>                                                                                   | Exits interface configuration mode.                                                                        |
| <b>Step 11</b> | Use the server's operating system to configure the E-Series Server's <b>GE1</b> interface. See the figure above. | —                                                                                                          |

### Example

This example shows how to configure an internal connection between the router and the E-Series Server.



**Note** The IP addresses in this configuration example are for reference only and might not be valid.

```
Router> enable
Router# configure terminal
```

```
Router(config)# interface ucse 1/0/0
Router(config-if)# ip address 10.0.0.1 255.0.0.0
Router(config-if)# no shut
Router(config-if)# end
```

Use the server's operating system to configure the E-Series Server's **GE0** interface.

```
Router(config)# interface ucse 1/0/1
Router(config-if)# ip address 11.0.0.1 255.255.255.0
Router(config-if)# no shut
Router(config-if)# end
```

Use the server's operating system to configure the E-Series Server's **GE1** interface.

## Creating an Ethernet Virtual Circuit Between the E-Series Server and the Cisco ISR 4000 Series Using the Native VLAN

Use this procedure if you have added the native VLAN to encapsulate and transport selected data either to the operating system installed on the E-Series Server, or to the virtual machines created on the installed hypervisor.

**Before you begin**

Configure an internal connection between the Cisco ISR 4000 series and the E-Series Server.

**Procedure**

|                | <b>Command or Action</b>                                                                   | <b>Purpose</b>                                                                                          |
|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Step 1</b>  | Router> <b>enable</b>                                                                      | Enters privileged EXEC mode on the host router. Enter your password if prompted.                        |
| <b>Step 2</b>  | Router# <b>configure terminal</b>                                                          | Enters global configuration mode on the host router.                                                    |
| <b>Step 3</b>  | Router (config)# <b>interface ucse slot/0/0</b>                                            | Enters interface configuration mode for the router's ucse <i>slot/0/0</i> interface.                    |
| <b>Step 4</b>  | Router (config-if)# <b>service instance id ethernet</b>                                    | Configures an Ethernet service instance on an interface and enters Ethernet service configuration mode. |
| <b>Step 5</b>  | Router (config-if-srv)# <b>encapsulation encapsulation-type vlan-id</b>                    | Defines the encapsulation type.                                                                         |
| <b>Step 6</b>  | Router (config-if-srv)# <b>bridge-domain bridge-id</b>                                     | Configures the bridge domain.                                                                           |
| <b>Step 7</b>  | Router (config-if-srv)# <b>exit</b>                                                        | Exits Ethernet service configuration mode.                                                              |
| <b>Step 8</b>  | Router (config-if)# <b>interface BDI bridge-id</b>                                         | Enters the bridge domain interface.                                                                     |
| <b>Step 9</b>  | Router (config-if)# <b>ip address bdi-interface-ip-address</b>                             | Specifies the IP address of the BDI interface.                                                          |
| <b>Step 10</b> | Router (config-if)# <b>no shut</b>                                                         | Causes the interface to be administratively up.                                                         |
| <b>Step 11</b> | Router (config-if)# <b>end</b>                                                             | Returns to global configuration mode on the host router.                                                |
| <b>Step 12</b> | Use the server's operating system to configure the E-Series Server's <b>GE0</b> interface. | —                                                                                                       |

**Example**

This example shows how to create an Ethernet Virtual Circuit using the native VLAN between the E-Series Server and the Cisco ISR 4000 series.



**Note** The IP addresses in this configuration example are for reference only.

```
Router> enable
Router# configure terminal
```

```

Router(config)# interface ucse 1/0/0
Router(config-if)# service instance 1 ethernet
Router(config-if-srv)# encapsulation untagged
Router(config-if-srv)# bridge-domain 1
Router(config-if-srv)# exit
Router(config-if)# exit

Router(config-if)# interface BDI 1
Router(config-if)# ip address 10.0.0.1 255.0.0.0
Router(config-if)# no shut
Router(config-if)# end

```

Use the server's operating system to configure the E-Series Server's **GE0** interface.

## Creating an Ethernet Virtual Circuit Between the E-Series Server and the Cisco ISR 4000 Series Using a Non-Native VLAN

Use this procedure if you have added a non-native VLAN to encapsulate and transport selected data either to the operating system installed on the E-Series Server, or to the virtual machines created on the installed hypervisor.

### Before you begin

Configure an internal connection between the E-Series Server and the Cisco ISR 4000 series.

### Procedure

|               | Command or Action                                                             | Purpose                                                                                                                        |
|---------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Step 1</b> | Router> <b>enable</b>                                                         | Enters privileged EXEC mode on the host router. Enter your password if prompted.                                               |
| <b>Step 2</b> | Router# <b>configure terminal</b>                                             | Enters global configuration mode on the host router.                                                                           |
| <b>Step 3</b> | Router (config)# <b>interface ucse slot/0/0</b>                               | Enters interface configuration mode for the router's <b>ucse slot/0/0</b> interface.                                           |
| <b>Step 4</b> | Router (config-if)# <b>no ip address</b>                                      | Removes an IP address or disables IP processing.                                                                               |
| <b>Step 5</b> | Router (config-if)# <b>no negotiation auto</b>                                | Disables automatic negotiation on the interface.                                                                               |
| <b>Step 6</b> | Router (config-if)# <b>switchport mode trunk</b>                              | Puts the port into permanent trunking mode.                                                                                    |
| <b>Step 7</b> | Router (config-if)# <b>service instance id ethernet</b>                       | Configures an Ethernet service instance on an interface and enters Ethernet service configuration mode.                        |
| <b>Step 8</b> | Router (config-if-srv)# <b>encapsulation dot1q encapsulation-type vlan-id</b> | Defines the encapsulation type.                                                                                                |
| <b>Step 9</b> | Enter one of the following commands:                                          | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The <b>rewrite egress tag push dot1q</b> command specifies the encapsulation</li> </ul> |

|                | Command or Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Purpose                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Router (config-if-srv)# <b>rewrite egress tag push dot1q encapsulation-type vlan-id</b></li> <li>• Router (config-if-srv)# <b>rewrite ingress tag pop 1 symmetric encapsulation-type vlan-id</b></li> </ul> | <p>adjustment to be performed on a frame that is egressing a service instance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The <b>rewrite ingress tag pop 1 symmetric</b> command specifies the encapsulation adjustment to be performed on a frame that is ingressing a service instance.</li> </ul> |
| <b>Step 10</b> | Router (config-if-srv)# <b>bridge-domain bridge-id</b>                                                                                                                                                                                               | Configures the bridge domain.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>Step 11</b> | Router (config-if-srv)# <b>exit</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Exits Ethernet service configuration mode.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>Step 12</b> | Router (config-if)# <b>exit</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Exits interface configuration mode.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>Step 13</b> | Router (config)# <b>interface BDI bridge-id</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Enters the bridge domain interface.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>Step 14</b> | Router (config-if)# <b>ip address bdi-interface-ip-address</b>                                                                                                                                                                                       | Specifies the IP address of the BDI interface.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <b>Step 15</b> | Router (config-if)# <b>no shut</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Causes the interface to be administratively up.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>Step 16</b> | Router (config-if)# <b>end</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Returns to global configuration mode on the host router.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <b>Step 17</b> | Use the server's operating system to configure the E-Series Server's <b>NIC</b> interface.                                                                                                                                                           | —                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <b>Step 18</b> | Router# <b>ping server's-NIC-interface</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Shows if connection is established with the E-Series Server's <b>NIC</b> interface.                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>Step 19</b> | Router# <b>show arp</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Displays the Access Resolution Protocol (ARP) cache.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>Step 20</b> | Router# <b>show bridge-domain bridge-id</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Displays bridge domain information.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |

### Example

This example shows how to create an Ethernet virtual circuit using a non-native VLAN between the E-Series Server and the Cisco ISR 4000 series.



**Note** The IP addresses in this configuration example are for reference only.

```
Router> enable
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# interface ucse 2/0/0
Router(config-if)# no ip address
Router(config-if)# no negotiation auto
Router(config-if)# switchport mode trunk
```

```

Router(config-if)# service instance 10 ethernet
Router(config-if-srv)# encapsulation dot1q 10
Router(config-if-srv)# rewrite egress tag push dot1q 10
Router(config-if-srv)# bridge-domain 10
Router(config-if-srv)# exit
Router(config-if)# exit

Router(config)# interface BDI10
Router(config-if)# ip address 192.168.1.1 255.255.255.0
Router(config-if)# no shut
Router(config-if)# end

```

Use the server's operating system to configure the E-Series Server's **NIC** interface.

```

Router# ping 192.168.1.2
Type escape sequence to abort.
Sending 5, 100-byte ICMP Echos to 192.168.1.2, timeout is 2 seconds:
!!!!
Success rate is 100 percent (5/5), round-trip min/avg/max = 1/1/2 ms

```

```

Router# show arp

```

| Protocol | Address     | Age (min) | Hardware Addr  | Type | Interface |
|----------|-------------|-----------|----------------|------|-----------|
| Internet | 192.168.1.1 | -         | 0022.bdfb.2783 | ARPA | BDI10     |
| Internet | 192.168.1.2 | 1         | 0022.bde6.07b4 | ARPA | BDI10     |

```

Router# show bridge-domain 10
Bridge-domain 10 (2 ports in all)
State: UP Mac learning: Enabled
Aging-Timer: 300 second(s)
 BDI10 (up)
 ucse2/0/0 service instance 10
MAC address Policy Tag Age Pseudoport
0022.BDE6.07B4 forward dynamic 246 ucse2/0/0.EFP10
0022.BDFB.2783 to_bdi static 0 BDI10

```



**Note** For additional details about the **rewrite** commands, see <http://www.cisco.com/en/US/docs/ios-xml/ios/cether/command/ce-cr-book.html>.

## Configuring an Internal Connection Between the Cisco ISR G2 and the EHWIC E-Series NCE

Use this configuration if you want the traffic to your application or operating system to flow through the Cisco ISR G2. To configure an internal connection between the Cisco ISR G2 and the EHWIC E-Series NCE, you must configure these IP addresses:

- For traffic to flow through the EHWIC connection (see next figure), configure the following:
  - IP address of the router's internal EHWIC interface that connects the router to the EHWIC E-Series NCE's GE0 interface.
  - IP address of the EHWIC E-Series NCE's GE0 interface.
- For traffic to flow through the MGF connection (see next figure), configure the following:



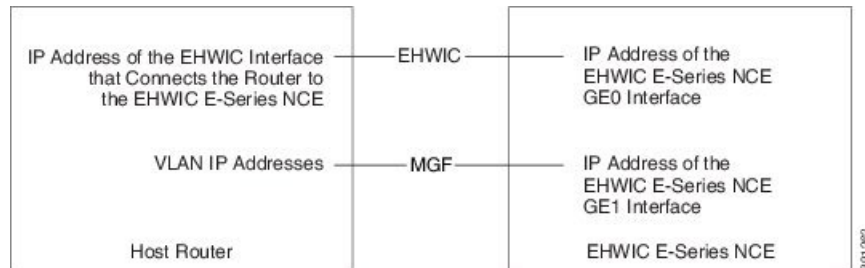


**Important** The MGF connection option is not applicable to the Cisco 1921 ISR G2.

- IP address of the router's internal MGF VLAN interface.
- IP address of the EHWIC E-Series NCE's GE1 interface.

The following figure shows the internal connection between the router and the EHWIC E-Series NCE.

**Figure 37: Internal Connection Between the Cisco ISR G2 and the EHWIC E-Series NCE**



**Procedure**

|               | <b>Command or Action</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | <b>Purpose</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|---------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Step 1</b> | Router> <b>enable</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Enters privileged EXEC mode on the host router. Enter your password if prompted.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>Step 2</b> | Router# <b>configure terminal</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Enters global configuration mode on the host router.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>Step 3</b> | Router (config)# <b>interface ucse 0/subslot/0</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Enters interface configuration mode for the router's EHWIC 0/subslot/0 interface.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <b>Step 4</b> | Enter one of the following commands: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Router (config-if)# <b>ip address</b> <i>router-to-e-series-server-interface-ip-address</i> <i>subnet-mask</i></li> <li>• Router (config-if)# <b>ip unnumbered</b> <i>type</i> <i>number</i></li> </ul> | The <b>ip address</b> command specifies the IP address of the router's internal PCIe interface that connects the router to the EHWIC E-Series NCE's GE0 interface. See the figure above.<br>or<br>The <b>ip unnumbered</b> command enables IP processing on an interface without assigning an explicit IP address to that interface. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>type</i>—Type of interface on which the router has an assigned IP address.</li> <li>• <i>number</i>—Number of the interface on which the router has an assigned IP address.</li> </ul> |

|                | Command or Action                                                                                                   | Purpose                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|----------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                |                                                                                                                     | <p><b>Note</b> The unnumbered interface must be unique. It cannot be another unnumbered interface.</p> <p><b>Caution</b> The <b>ip unnumbered</b> command creates a point-to-point interface between devices. Broadcasting is not supported.</p> |
| <b>Step 5</b>  | Router (config-if)# <b>no shut</b>                                                                                  | Causes the interface to be administratively up.                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>Step 6</b>  | Router (config-if)# <b>end</b>                                                                                      | Exits interface configuration mode.                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>Step 7</b>  | Use the server's operating system to configure the EHWIC E-Series NCE's <b>GE0</b> interface. See the figure above. | —                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>Step 8</b>  | Router (config)# <b>interface ucse 0/subslot/1</b>                                                                  | <p>Enters interface configuration mode for the router's MGF <b>0/subslot/1</b> VLAN interface. See the figure above.</p> <p><b>Important</b> This step is not applicable to the Cisco ISR 1921.</p>                                              |
| <b>Step 9</b>  | Router (config-if)# <b>switchport mode trunk</b>                                                                    | Puts the port into permanent trunking mode. The default configuration is access mode.                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>Step 10</b> | Router (config-if)# [ <b>switchport trunk allowed vlan <i>vlan-numbers</i></b> ]                                    | <p>(Optional) Allows trunking on the specified VLANs.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>vlan-numbers</i>—VLAN numbers on which to allow trunking.</li> </ul>                                                                       |
| <b>Step 11</b> | Router (config-if)# <b>end</b>                                                                                      | Exits interface configuration mode.                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>Step 12</b> | Router# <b>configure terminal</b>                                                                                   | Enters global configuration mode on the host router.                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>Step 13</b> | Router (config)# <b>interface vlan <i>vlan-number</i></b>                                                           | Enters interface configuration mode for the specified VLAN number.                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <b>Step 14</b> | Router (config-if)# <b>ip address <i>vlan-ip-address subnet-mask</i></b>                                            | <p>Specifies the IP address for the VLAN. See the figure above.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>vlan-ip-address</i>—IP address of the VLAN.</li> <li>• <i>subnet-mask</i>—Subnet mask to append to the IP address.</li> </ul>    |
| <b>Step 15</b> | Router (config-if)# <b>no shut</b>                                                                                  | Causes the interface to be administratively up.                                                                                                                                                                                                  |

|                | Command or Action                                                                                                   | Purpose                                                                |
|----------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Step 16</b> | Router (config-if)# <b>end</b>                                                                                      | Exits interface configuration mode.                                    |
| <b>Step 17</b> | Use the server's operating system to configure the EHWIC E-Series NCE's <b>GE1</b> interface. See the figure above. | <b>Important</b> This step is not applicable to the Cisco 1921 ISR G2. |

### Example

This example shows how to configure an internal connection between the router and the EHWIC E-Series NCE.



**Note** The IP addresses in this configuration example are for reference only and might not be valid.

```
Router> enable
Router# configure terminal

Router(config)# interface ucse 0/1/0
Router(config-if)# ip address 10.0.0.1 255.0.0.0
Router(config-if)# no shut
Router(config-if)# end
```

Use the server's operating system to configure the E-Series Server's **GE0** interface

```
Router(config)# interface ucse 0/1/1
Router(config-if)# switchport mode trunk
Router(config-if)# end

Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# interface vlan 1
Router(config-if)# ip address 20.0.0.1 255.255.255.0
Router(config-if)# no shut
Router(config-if)# end
```

Use the server's operating system to configure the E-Series Server's **GE1** interface.

## Configuring an Internal Connection Between the Cisco ISR 4000 Series and the NIM E-Series NCE

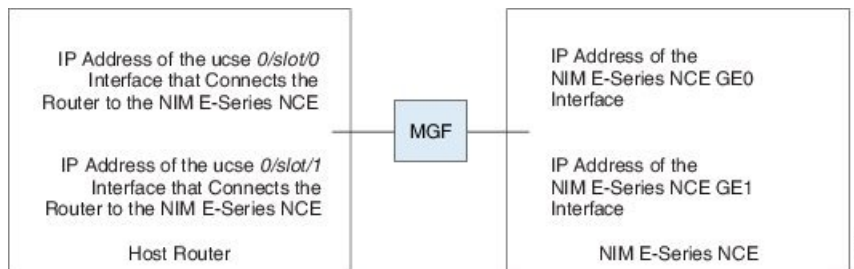
Use this configuration if you want the traffic to your application or operating system to flow through the Cisco ISR 4000 series. To configure an internal connection between the Cisco ISR 4000 series and the NIM E-Series NCE, you must configure these IP addresses:

- For traffic to flow through the router's **ucse 0/subslot/0** and the server's internal GE0 interface (see next figure), configure the following:
  - IP address of the router's **ucse 0/subslot/0** interface that connects the router to the server's GE0 interface.

- IP address of the server's GE0 interface.
- For traffic to flow through the router's **ucse 0/subslot/1** and the server's internal GE1 interface (see next figure), configure the following:
  - IP address of the router's **ucse 0/subslot/1** interface.
  - IP address of the server's GE1 interface.

The following figure shows the internal connection between the router and the server.

**Figure 38: Internal Connection Between the Cisco ISR 4000 Series and the NIM E-Series NCE**



**Procedure**

|               | <b>Command or Action</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | <b>Purpose</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|---------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Step 1</b> | Router> <b>enable</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Enters privileged EXEC mode on the host router. Enter your password if prompted.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <b>Step 2</b> | Router# <b>configure terminal</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Enters global configuration mode on the host router.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>Step 3</b> | Router (config)# <b>interface ucse 0/subslot/0</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | Enters interface configuration mode for the router's <b>ucse 0/subslot/0</b> interface.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <b>Step 4</b> | Enter one of the following commands: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Router (config-if)# <b>ip address</b> <i>router-to-e-series-server-interface-ip-address</i> <i>subnet-mask</i></li> <li>• Router (config-if)# <b>ip unnumbered</b> <i>type number</i></li> </ul> | Specify the IP address of the router's <b>ucse 0/subslot/0</b> interface that connects the router to the server's GE0 interface. See the figure above.<br>or<br>The <b>ip unnumbered</b> command enables IP processing on an interface without assigning an explicit IP address to that interface. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>type</i>—Type of interface on which the router has an assigned IP address.</li> <li>• <i>number</i>—Number of the interface on which the router has an assigned IP address.</li> </ul> |

|                | Command or Action                                                                                       | Purpose                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|----------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                |                                                                                                         | <p><b>Note</b> The unnumbered interface must be unique. It cannot be another unnumbered interface.</p> <p><b>Caution</b> The <b>ip unnumbered</b> command creates a point-to-point interface between devices. Broadcasting is not supported.</p> |
| <b>Step 5</b>  | Router (config-if)# <b>no shut</b>                                                                      | Causes the interface to be administratively up.                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>Step 6</b>  | Router (config-if)# <b>end</b>                                                                          | Exits interface configuration mode.                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>Step 7</b>  | Use the server's operating system to configure the server's <b>GE0</b> interface. See the figure above. | —                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>Step 8</b>  | Router (config)# <b>interface ucse 0/subslot/1</b>                                                      | Enters interface configuration mode for the router's <b>ucse 0/subslot/1</b> interface.                                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>Step 9</b>  | Router (config-if)# <b>no shut</b>                                                                      | Causes the interface to be administratively up.                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>Step 10</b> | Router (config-if)# <b>end</b>                                                                          | Exits interface configuration mode.                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>Step 11</b> | Use the server's operating system to configure the server's <b>GE1</b> interface. See the figure above. | —                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |

### Example

This example shows how to configure an internal connection between the router and the NIM E-Series NCE.



**Note** The IP addresses in this configuration example are for reference only and might not be valid.

```
Router> enable
Router# configure terminal

Router(config)# interface ucse 0/1/0
Router(config-if)# ip address 10.0.0.1 255.0.0.0
Router(config-if)# no shut
Router(config-if)# end
```

Use the server's operating system to configure the NIM E-Series NCE's **GE0** interface.

```
Router(config)# interface ucse 0/1/1
Router(config-if)# ip address 11.0.0.1 255.255.255.0
Router(config-if)# no shut
Router(config-if)# end
```

Use the server's operating system to configure the NIM E-Series NCE's **GE1** interface.

## Creating an Ethernet Virtual Circuit Between the NIM E-Series NCE and the Cisco ISR 4000 Series Using the Native VLAN

Use this procedure if you have added the native VLAN to encapsulate and transport selected data either to the operating system installed on the E-Series Server, or to the virtual machines created on the installed hypervisor.

### Before you begin

Configure an internal connection between the Cisco ISR 4000 series and the NIM E-Series NCE.

### Procedure

|                | Command or Action                                                                           | Purpose                                                                                                 |
|----------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Step 1</b>  | Router> <b>enable</b>                                                                       | Enters privileged EXEC mode on the host router. Enter your password if prompted.                        |
| <b>Step 2</b>  | Router# <b>configure terminal</b>                                                           | Enters global configuration mode on the host router.                                                    |
| <b>Step 3</b>  | Router (config)# <b>interface ucse 0/subslot0</b>                                           | Enters interface configuration mode for the router's <b>0/subslot0</b> interface.                       |
| <b>Step 4</b>  | Router (config-if)# <b>service instance id ethernet</b>                                     | Configures an Ethernet service instance on an interface and enters Ethernet service configuration mode. |
| <b>Step 5</b>  | Router (config-if-srv)# <b>encapsulation encapsulation-type vlan-id</b>                     | Defines the encapsulation type.                                                                         |
| <b>Step 6</b>  | Router (config-if-srv)# <b>bridge-domain bridge-id</b>                                      | Configures the bridge domain.                                                                           |
| <b>Step 7</b>  | Router (config-if-srv)# <b>exit</b>                                                         | Exits Ethernet service configuration mode.                                                              |
| <b>Step 8</b>  | Router (config-if)# <b>interface BDI bridge-id</b>                                          | Enters the bridge domain interface.                                                                     |
| <b>Step 9</b>  | Router (config-if)# <b>ip address bdi-interface-ip-address</b>                              | Specifies the IP address of the BDI interface.                                                          |
| <b>Step 10</b> | Router (config-if)# <b>no shut</b>                                                          | Causes the interface to be administratively up.                                                         |
| <b>Step 11</b> | Router (config-if)# <b>end</b>                                                              | Returns to global configuration mode on the host router.                                                |
| <b>Step 12</b> | Use the server's operating system to configure the NIM E-Series NCE's <b>GE0</b> interface. | —                                                                                                       |

### Example

This example shows how to create an Ethernet Virtual Circuit using the native VLAN between the NIM E-Series NCE and the Cisco ISR 4000 series.



**Note** The IP addresses in this configuration example are for reference only.

```

Router> enable
Router# configure terminal

Router(config)# interface ucse 0/1/0
Router(config-if)# service instance 1 ethernet
Router(config-if-srv)# encapsulation untagged
Router(config-if-srv)# bridge-domain 1
Router(config-if-srv)# exit
Router(config-if)# exit

Router(config-if)# interface BDI 1
Router(config-if)# ip address 10.0.0.1 255.0.0.0
Router(config-if)# no shut
Router(config-if)# end

```

Use the server's operating system to configure the NIM E-Series NCE's **GEO** interface.

## Creating an Ethernet Virtual Circuit Between the NIM E-Series NCE and the Cisco ISR 4000 Series Using a Non-Native VLAN

Use this procedure if you have added a non-native VLAN to encapsulate and transport selected data either to the operating system installed on the NIM E-Series NCE, or to the virtual machines created on the installed hypervisor.

### Before you begin

Configure an internal connection between the Cisco ISR 4000 series and the NIM E-Series NCE.

### Procedure

|               | Command or Action                                  | Purpose                                                                          |
|---------------|----------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Step 1</b> | Router> <b>enable</b>                              | Enters privileged EXEC mode on the host router. Enter your password if prompted. |
| <b>Step 2</b> | Router# <b>configure terminal</b>                  | Enters global configuration mode on the host router.                             |
| <b>Step 3</b> | Router (config)# <b>interface ucse 0/subslot/0</b> | Enters interface configuration mode for the router's ucse 0/subslot/0 interface. |
| <b>Step 4</b> | Router (config-if)# <b>no ip address</b>           | Removes an IP address or disables IP processing.                                 |

|                | Command or Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Purpose                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|----------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Step 5</b>  | Router (config-if)# <b>no negotiation auto</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Disables automatic negotiation on the interface.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>Step 6</b>  | Router (config-if)# <b>switchport mode trunk</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Puts the port into permanent trunking mode.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <b>Step 7</b>  | Router (config-if)# <b>service instance id ethernet</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Configures an Ethernet service instance on an interface and enters Ethernet service configuration mode.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>Step 8</b>  | Router (config-if-srv)# <b>encapsulation dot1q encapsulation-type vlan-id</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Defines the encapsulation type.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>Step 9</b>  | Enter one of the following commands: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Router (config-if-srv)# <b>rewrite egress tag push dot1q encapsulation-type vlan-id</b></li> <li>Router (config-if-srv)# <b>rewrite ingress tag pop 1 symmetric encapsulation-type vlan-id</b></li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The <b>rewrite egress tag push dot1q</b> command specifies the encapsulation adjustment to be performed on a frame that is egressing a service instance.</li> <li>The <b>rewrite ingress tag pop 1 symmetric</b> command specifies the encapsulation adjustment to be performed on a frame that is ingressing a service instance.</li> </ul> |
| <b>Step 10</b> | Router (config-if-srv)# <b>bridge-domain bridge-id</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Configures the bridge domain.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <b>Step 11</b> | Router (config-if-srv)# <b>exit</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Exits Ethernet service configuration mode.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>Step 12</b> | Router (config-if)# <b>exit</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Exits interface configuration mode.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>Step 13</b> | Router (config)# <b>interface BDI bridge-id</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Enters the bridge domain interface.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>Step 14</b> | Router (config-if)# <b>ip address bdi-interface-ip-address</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Specifies the IP address of the BDI interface.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <b>Step 15</b> | Router (config-if)# <b>no shut</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Causes the interface to be administratively up.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>Step 16</b> | Router (config-if)# <b>end</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Returns to global configuration mode on the host router.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>Step 17</b> | Use the server's operating system to configure the NIM E-Series NCE's <b>NIC</b> interface.                                                                                                                                                                                           | —                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>Step 18</b> | Router# <b>ping server's-NIC-interface</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Shows if connection is established with the NIM E-Series NCE's <b>NIC</b> interface.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>Step 19</b> | Router# <b>show arp</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Displays the Access Resolution Protocol (ARP) cache.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>Step 20</b> | Router# <b>show bridge-domain bridge-id</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Displays bridge domain information.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |



## Example

This example shows how to create an Ethernet virtual circuit using a non-native VLAN between the NIM E-Series NCE and the Cisco ISR 4000 series.



**Note** The IP addresses in this configuration example are for reference only.

```
Router> enable
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# interface ucse 0/1/0
Router(config-if)# no ip address
Router(config-if)# no negotiation auto
Router(config-if)# switchport mode trunk
Router(config-if)# service instance 10 ethernet
Router(config-if-srv)# encapsulation dot1q 10
Router(config-if-srv)# rewrite egress tag push dot1q 10
Router(config-if-srv)# bridge-domain 10
Router(config-if-srv)# exit
Router(config-if)# exit

Router(config)# interface BDI10
Router(config-if)# ip address 192.168.1.1 255.255.255.0
Router(config-if)# no shut
Router(config-if)# end
```

Use the server's operating system to configure the NIM E-Series NCE's **NIC** interface.

```
Router# ping 192.168.1.2
Type escape sequence to abort.
Sending 5, 100-byte ICMP Echos to 192.168.1.2, timeout is 2 seconds:
!!!!
Success rate is 100 percent (5/5), round-trip min/avg/max = 1/1/2 ms
```

```
Router# show arp
Protocol Address Age (min) Hardware Addr Type Interface
Internet 192.168.1.1 - 0022.bdfb.2783 ARPA BDI10
Internet 192.168.1.2 1 0022.bde6.07b4 ARPA BDI10
```

```
Router# show bridge-domain 10
Bridge-domain 10 (2 ports in all)
State: UP Mac learning: Enabled
Aging-Timer: 300 second(s)
 BDI10 (up)
 ucse2/0/0 service instance 10
MAC address Policy Tag Age Pseudoport
0022.BDE6.07B4 forward dynamic 246 ucse2/0/0.EFP10
0022.BDFB.2783 to_bdi static 0 BDI10
```



**Note** For additional details about the **rewrite** commands, see <http://www.cisco.com/en/US/docs/ios-xml/ios/ce/ether/command/ce-cr-book.html>.

# Understanding Network Interface Mapping

This section shows you how to determine the network interface mapping for the following devices:

- E-Series Server's GE0, GE1, GE2, and GE3 interfaces—Cisco ISR G2
- E-Series Server's GE0, GE1, GE2, and GE3 interfaces—Cisco ISR 4000 series
- EHWIC E-Series NCE's GE0, GE1, and GE2 interfaces—Cisco ISR G2
- NIM E-Series NCE's GE0, GE1, and GE2 interfaces—Cisco ISR 4000 series
- NetXtreme II 1 Gigabit Server (PCIe Card)
- NetXtreme II 10 Gigabit Server (PCIe Card)

## Determining Network Interface Mapping for the E-Series Server's GE0, GE1, GE2, and GE3 Interfaces—Cisco ISR G2

You can determine the port numbering of the E-Series Server by looking at the MAC addresses of the network interfaces. Note the following:

- The lowest numbered MAC address corresponds to the E-Series Server's GE0 interface.
- The second lowest MAC address corresponds to the E-Series Server's GE1 interface.
- The third lowest MAC address corresponds to the E-Series Server's GE2 interface.
- The fourth lowest MAC address corresponds to the E-Series Server's GE3 interface.




---

**Note** To determine the MAC address of an interface, see the [Determining the MAC Address in Microsoft Windows, Linux, and VMware vSphere Hypervisor](#), on page 136 section, or the appropriate platform documentation.

---

## Determining Network Interface Mapping for the E-Series Server's GE0, GE1, GE2, and GE3 Interfaces—Cisco ISR 4000 series

You can determine the port numbering of the E-Series Server by looking at the MAC addresses of the network interfaces. Note the following:

- The lowest numbered MAC address corresponds to the E-Series Server's GE0 interface.
- The second lowest MAC address corresponds to the E-Series Server's GE1 interface.
- The third lowest MAC address corresponds to the E-Series Server's GE2 interface.
- The fourth lowest MAC address corresponds to the E-Series Server's GE3 interface.




---

**Note** To determine the MAC address of an interface, see the [Determining the MAC Address in Microsoft Windows, Linux, and VMware vSphere Hypervisor](#), on page 136 section, or the appropriate platform documentation.

---

### Determining Network Interface Mapping for the EHWIC E-Series NCE's GE0, GE1, and GE2 Interfaces—Cisco ISR G2

You can determine the port numbering of the EHWIC E-Series NCE by looking at the MAC addresses of the network interfaces. Note the following:

- The lowest numbered MAC address corresponds to the EHWIC E-Series NCE's GE0 interface.
- The second lowest MAC address corresponds to the EHWIC E-Series NCE's GE1 interface.
- The third lowest MAC address corresponds to the EHWIC E-Series NCE's GE2 interface.



---

**Note** To determine the MAC address of an interface, see the [Determining the MAC Address in Microsoft Windows, Linux, and VMware vSphere Hypervisor](#), on page 136 section, or the appropriate platform documentation.

---

### Determining Network Interface Mapping for the NIM E-Series NCE's GE0, GE1, and GE2 Interfaces—Cisco ISR 4000 series

You can determine the port numbering of the NIM E-Series NCE by looking at the MAC addresses of the network interfaces. Note the following:

- The lowest numbered MAC address corresponds to the NIM E-Series NCE's GE0 interface.
- The second lowest MAC address corresponds to the NIM E-Series NCE's GE1 interface.
- The third lowest MAC address corresponds to the NIM E-Series NCE's GE2 interface.



---

**Note** To determine the MAC address of an interface, see the [Determining the MAC Address in Microsoft Windows, Linux, and VMware vSphere Hypervisor](#), on page 136 section, or the appropriate platform documentation.

---

### Determining the Interface Name and Port Mapping for the NetXtreme II 1 Gigabit Server

To determine which interface name maps to which port number in the NetXtreme II 1 Gigabit Server (PCIe card), do the following:

1. Connect the PCIe card's port 0 to an external network device using a network cable.
2. From the host operating system, check the status of the interface to determine which interface is connected.
3. Repeat Step 2 for ports 1, 2, and 3.



---

**Note** For information about how to determine the status of the interface, see the appropriate operating system documentation.

---

### Determining the Interface Name and Port Mapping for the NetXtreme II 10 Gigabit Server



**Note** Only one port is enabled in the NetXtreme II 10 Gigabit Server (PCIe card).

To determine which interface name maps to which port number in the NetXtreme II 10 Gigabit Server (PCIe card), do the following:

1. Connect the PCIe card's port 0 to an external network device using a network cable.
2. From the host operating system, check the status of the interface to determine which interface is connected.



**Note** For information about how to determine the status of the interface, see the appropriate operating system documentation.

## Determining the MAC Address in Microsoft Windows, Linux, and VMware vSphere Hypervisor

### Determining the MAC Address in the Microsoft Windows Operating System

To determine the MAC address of an interface in the Microsoft Windows operating systems, open a command window, and then enter the **ipconfig /all** command.

### Determining the MAC Address in the Linux Operating System

To determine the MAC address of an interface in the Linux operating systems, open a terminal window, and then enter the **ifconfig -a** command to display the MAC address of all interfaces or **ifconfig interface-name** to display the MAC address of a particular interface.

### Determining the MAC Address in the VMware vSphere Hypervisor

To determine the MAC address of an interface in the VMware vSphere Hypervisor, do the following:

1. In your web browser, enter the IP address that you configured to access CIMC during initial setup and then log into CIMC.

The CIMC Home page, which is the **Server Summary** page, appears.

2. From the **Actions** area of the **Server Summary** page, click the **Launch KVM Console** icon.

The **KVM Console** opens in a separate window.

3. From the KVM Console, click the **KVM** tab, and then do the following:
  - Press **F2** to access the VMware vSphere Hypervisor DCUI customization menu. The **DCUI** login page appears.
  - Log into the **DCUI**. The **System Customization** page appears.
  - From the **System Customization** page, click **Configure Management Network**.

The **Configure Management Network** page appears, which has several menu options, including **Network Adapter**. The **Network Adapter** menu option allows you to view the MAC address of the interfaces.

### UCS E Series M3 Servers: Reordering ESXi VMNIC Interface Number to Start with Server's Lowest MAC Address

On Cisco UCS E Series M3 servers, the VMware vSphere Hypervisor DCUI VMNIC interface ordering does not map to server's lowest MAC address. After installing ESXi on M3 servers, the default DCUI VMNIC interface ordering and server's NIC interface mappings are:

| ~ Name | MAC Address       | UCS-E160S-M3 NIC | Description                                             |
|--------|-------------------|------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| vmnic0 | a8:9d:21:fc:61:12 | TE2              | Intel(R) Ethernet Connection X552/X557-AT 10GBASE-T     |
| vmnic1 | a8:9d:21:fc:61:13 | TE3              | Intel(R) Ethernet Connection X552/X557-AT 10GBASE-T     |
| vmnic2 | a8:9d:21:fc:61:10 | GE0              | Broadcom Corporation NetXtreme BCM5719 Gigabit Ethernet |
| vmnic3 | a8:9d:21:fc:61:11 | GE1              | Broadcom Corporation NetXtreme BCM5719 Gigabit Ethernet |

To make VMNIC interface ordering to start with the server's lowest MAC address, follow these procedures:

1. Enable SSH and Shell Access in ESXi.
2. SSH into ESXi.
3. Use `esxcli network nic list` command to display VMNIC number and its corresponding MAC address.
4. Use `localcli --plugin-dir /usr/lib/vmware/esxcli/int/deviceInternal alias list` command to display the Bus address and VMNIC number mappings.
5. Use `localcli` command to remap VMNIC number to Bus address that has the lowest MAC address.
6. Reboot ESXi.
7. SSH into ESXi and verify changes.

The following example shows how to display VMNIC number and its MAC address:

```
~ # esxcli network nic list
Name PCI Device Driver Link Speed Duplex MAC Address MTU Description
----- -
vmnic0 0000:004:00.0 ixgbe Up 1000 Full a8:9d:21:fc:61:12 1500 Intel(R)
Ethernet Connection X552/X557-AT 10GBASE-T
vmnic1 0000:004:00.1 ixgbe Up 1000 Full a8:9d:21:fc:61:13 1500 Intel(R)
Ethernet Connection X552/X557-AT 10GBASE-T
vmnic2 0000:008:00.0 tg3 Up 1000 Full a8:9d:21:fc:61:10 1500 Broadcom
Corporation NetXtreme BCM5719 Gigabit Ethernet
vmnic3 0000:008:00.1 tg3 Up 1000 Full a8:9d:21:fc:61:11 1500 Broadcom
Corporation NetXtreme BCM5719 Gigabit Ethernet
```

The following example shows how to display Bus address and VMNIC name mapping:

```
~ # localcli --plugin-dir /usr/lib/vmware/esxcli/int/ deviceInternal alias list
Bus type Bus address Alias
----- -

```

```

pci p0000:06:00.0 vmhba0
pci p0000:08:00.0 vmnic2
pci p0000:08:00.1 vmnic3
pci p0000:04:00.1 vmnic1
pci p0000:04:00.0 vmnic0
logical pci#p0000:06:00.0#0 vmhba0

```

The following example shows how to remap VMNIC number to the Bus address that has the lowest MAC address:

```

~ # localcli --plugin-dir /usr/lib/vmware/esxcli/int/ deviceInternal alias store --alias
vmnic0 --bus-address p0000:08:00.0 --bus-type pci
~ # localcli --plugin-dir /usr/lib/vmware/esxcli/int/ deviceInternal alias store --alias
vmnic1 --bus-address p0000:08:00.1 --bus-type pci
~ # localcli --plugin-dir /usr/lib/vmware/esxcli/int/ deviceInternal alias store --alias
vmnic2 --bus-address p0000:04:00.0 --bus-type pci
~ # localcli --plugin-dir /usr/lib/vmware/esxcli/int/ deviceInternal alias store --alias
vmnic3 --bus-address p0000:04:00.1 --bus-type pci
~ # reboot

```

The following example shows how the VMNIC interface ordering looks like after the reboot. The VMNIC interface number begins with the lowest MAC address.:

```

~ # esxcli network nic list
Name PCI Device Driver Link Speed Duplex MAC Address MTU Description
----- -
vmnic0 0000:008:00.0 tg3 Up 1000 Full a8:9d:21:fc:61:10 1500 Broadcom
Corporation NetXtreme BCM5719 Gigabit Ethernet
vmnic1 0000:008:00.1 tg3 Up 1000 Full a8:9d:21:fc:61:11 1500 Broadcom
Corporation NetXtreme BCM5719 Gigabit Ethernet
vmnic2 0000:004:00.0 ixgbe Up 1000 Full a8:9d:21:fc:61:12 1500 Intel(R)
Ethernet Connection X552/X557-AT 10GBASE-T
vmnic3 0000:004:00.1 ixgbe Up 1000 Full a8:9d:21:fc:61:13 1500 Intel(R)
Ethernet Connection X552/X557-AT 10GBASE-T
~ # localcli --plugin-dir /usr/lib/vmware/esxcli/int/ deviceInternal alias list
Bus type Bus address Alias
----- -
pci p0000:06:00.0 vmhba0
pci p0000:08:00.0 vmnic0
pci p0000:08:00.1 vmnic1
pci p0000:04:00.1 vmnic3
pci p0000:04:00.0 vmnic2
logical pci#p0000:06:00.0#0 vmhba0
~ #

```



## CHAPTER 9

# Upgrading Firmware

This chapter includes the following sections:

- [Options for Upgrading Firmware, on page 139](#)
- [Cisco Host Upgrade Utility Overview, on page 139](#)
- [Minimum CIMC and BIOS Firmware Releases Required to Use HUU, on page 140](#)
- [CIMC and BIOS Firmware Releases Available With HUU ISO Images, on page 141](#)
- [Understanding the HUU User Interface, on page 144](#)
- [Upgrading the Firmware, on page 145](#)
- [Troubleshooting, on page 148](#)
- [BIOS Overview, on page 149](#)
- [Determining the Current BIOS Version, on page 149](#)
- [Obtaining Software from Cisco Systems, on page 149](#)
- [Upgrading Firmware Manually, on page 151](#)
- [Accessing the BIOS Setup Menu, on page 152](#)
- [Changing Configuration Using the BIOS Setup Menu, on page 155](#)

## Options for Upgrading Firmware

You can use either the Cisco Host Upgrade Utility (HUU) to upgrade the firmware components or you can upgrade the firmware components manually.

- **HUU**—We recommend that you use the HUU ISO file to upgrade all firmware components, which include the CIMC and BIOS firmware.
- **Manual Upgrade**—To manually upgrade the CIMC and BIOS firmware, you must first obtain the firmware from Cisco Systems, and then use the CIMC GUI or the CIMC CLI to upgrade it. After you upgrade the firmware, reboot the system.

## Cisco Host Upgrade Utility Overview

The Cisco Host Upgrade Utility (HUU) is a tool that you can use to upgrade the firmware on the Cisco UCS E-Series Servers (E-Series Servers) and the Cisco UCS E-Series Network Compute Engine (NCE). The HUU provides a web-based GUI where you can choose all or specific firmware components to upgrade.

The following firmware components are available for upgrade:

- Cisco Integrated Management Controller (CIMC)
- System BIOS
- LAN on motherboard (LOM)
- RAID controllers
- Broadcom PCI adapters:
  - 5709 Dual and Quad port adapters
  - 57712 Dual port adapter
- LSI
  - LSI MegaRAID SAS 9240-4i




---

**Note** Cisco UCS E Series servers do not support saving HUU logs to RAID\_SD0\_1.

---

You cannot use the HUU to upgrade the Programmable Logic Devices (PLD) firmware. You must use the Cisco IOS CLI to upgrade the PLD firmware. For details, see the "Upgrading Programmable Logic Devices Firmware on the E-Series EHWIC NCE" section in the *CLI Configuration Guide for Cisco UCS E-Series Servers and the Cisco UCS E-Series Network Compute Engine*.

## Minimum CIMC and BIOS Firmware Releases Required to Use HUU

The HUU is supported on CIMC, release 2.1.0 and later releases. To use HUU, make sure that you upgrade both the CIMC and BIOS firmware to the release specified in the table below.




---

**Note** The HUU is *not* supported on CIMC, releases 1.0 and 1.0(2). If you try to use the HUU on a server that has an older release of CIMC, you will get an error message asking you to upgrade the firmware.

---

The following table provides information about the minimum CIMC and BIOS releases required to use the HUU.

**Table 5: Minimum CIMC and BIOS Firmware Releases Required to Use HUU**

| Minimum Compatible CIMC Release | Minimum Compatible BIOS Release |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 2.1.0                           | 1.5.0.2                         |



# CIMC and BIOS Firmware Releases Available With HUU ISO Images

The following table provided the CIMC and BIOS firmware releases that are available for upgrade when you install a specific HUU ISO image.

**Table 6: CIMC and BIOS Firmware Releases Available With HUU ISO Images**

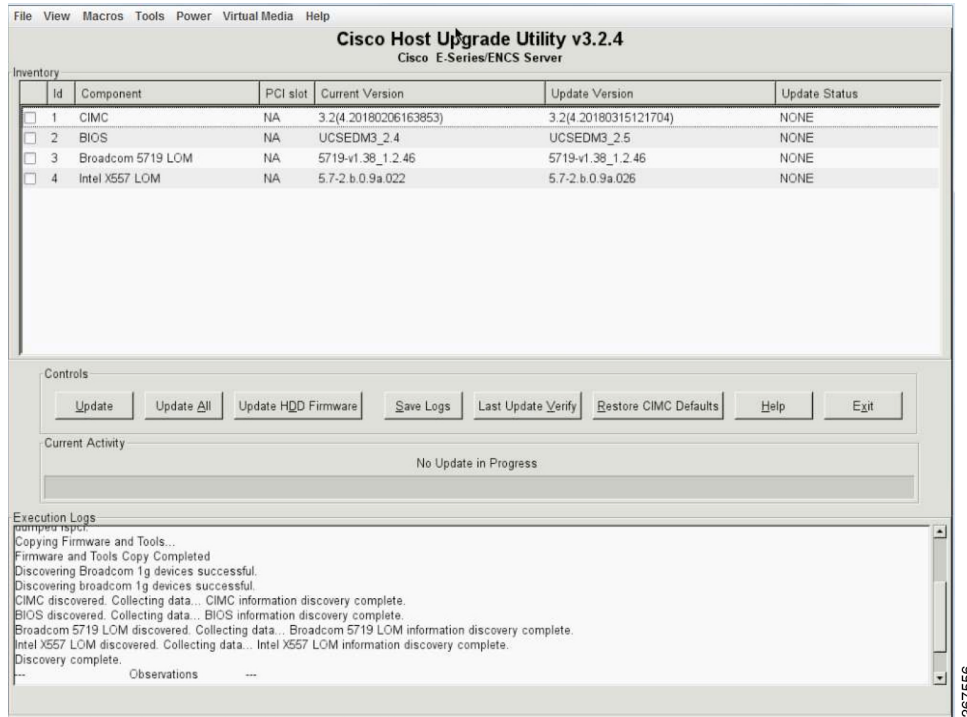
| HUU ISO Image | Contains CIMC Release | Contains BIOS Release                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|---------------|-----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3.1.1         | 3.1.1                 | <p>UCSEN.1.5.0.3—Applicable to the EHWIC E-Series NCE and the NIM E-Series NCE (UCS-EN120E and UCS-EN140N-M2)</p> <p>UCSES.1.5.0.2—Applicable to the single-wide E-Series Server (UCS-E140S-M1, UCS-EN120S-M2 and UCS-E140S-M2)</p> <p>UCSED.2.5.0.3—Applicable to the double-wide E-Series Servers (UCS-E140D-M1, UCS-E160D-M1, UCS-E160D-M2 and UCS-E180D-M2)</p>                                                                     |
| 3.1.2         | 3.1.2                 | <p>UCSEN.1.5.0.3—Applicable to the EHWIC E-Series NCE and the NIM E-Series NCE (UCS-EN120E and UCS-EN140N-M2)</p> <p>UCSES.1.5.0.2—Applicable to the single-wide E-Series Server (UCS-E140S-M1, UCS-EN120S-M2 and UCS-E140S-M2)</p> <p>UCSED.2.5.0.3—Applicable to the double-wide E-Series Servers (UCS-E140D-M1, UCS-E160D-M1, UCS-E160D-M2 and UCS-E180D-M2)</p>                                                                     |
| 3.1.3         | 3.1.3                 | <p>UCSEN.1.5.0.3—Applicable to the EHWIC E-Series NCE and the NIM E-Series NCE (UCS-EN120E and UCS-EN140N-M2)</p> <p>UCSES.1.5.0.2—Applicable to the single-wide E-Series Server (UCS-E140S-M1)</p> <p>UCSES.1.5.0.5—Applicable to the single-wide E-Series Server (UCS-EN120S-M2 and UCS-E140S-M2)</p> <p>UCSED.2.5.0.3—Applicable to the double-wide E-Series Servers (UCS-E140D-M1, UCS-E160D-M1, UCS-E160D-M2 and UCS-E180D-M2)</p> |

| HUU ISO Image | Contains CIMC Release | Contains BIOS Release                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|---------------|-----------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3.1.4         | 3.1.4                 | <p>UCSEN.1.5.0.3—Applicable to the EHWIC E-Series NCE and the NIM E-Series NCE (UCS-EN120E and UCS-EN140N-M2)</p> <p>UCSES.1.5.0.2—Applicable to the single-wide E-Series Server (UCS-E140S-M1)</p> <p>UCSES.1.5.0.5—Applicable to the single-wide E-Series Server (UCS-EN120S-M2 and UCS-E140S-M2)</p> <p>UCSED.2.5.0.3—Applicable to the double-wide E-Series Servers (UCS-E140D-M1, UCS-E160D-M1, UCS-E160D-M2 and UCS-E180D-M2)</p> <p>UCSEM3.1.0—Applicable to the single-wide E-Series Server (UCS-E160S-M3)</p>                                                                                                   |
| 3.2.2         | 3.2.2                 | <p>UCSEN.1.5.0.5—Applicable to the EHWIC E-Series NCE and the NIM E-Series NCE (UCS-EN120E and UCS-EN140N-M2)</p> <p>UCSES.1.5.0.2—Applicable to the single-wide E-Series Server (UCS-E140S-M1)</p> <p>UCSES.1.5.0.6—Applicable to the single-wide E-Series Server (UCS-EN120S-M2 and UCS-E140S-M2)</p> <p>UCSED.2.5.0.4—Applicable to the double-wide E-Series Servers (UCS-E140D-M1, UCS-E160D-M1, UCS-E160D-M2 and UCS-E180D-M2)</p> <p>UCSEM3.2.4—Applicable to the single-wide E-Series Server (UCS-E160S-M3)</p> <p>UCSEDM3.2.4—Applicable to the single-wide E-Series Server (UCS-E180D-M3 and UCS-E1120D-M3)</p> |

| HUU ISO Image | Contains CIMC Release | Contains BIOS Release                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|---------------|-----------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3.2.3         | 3.2.3                 | <p>UCSEN.1.5.0.5—Applicable to the EHWIC E-Series NCE and the NIM E-Series NCE (UCS-EN120E and UCS-EN140N-M2)</p> <p>UCSES.1.5.0.2—Applicable to the single-wide E-Series Server (UCS-E140S-M1)</p> <p>UCSES.1.5.0.6—Applicable to the single-wide E-Series Server (UCS-EN120S-M2 and UCS-E140S-M2)</p> <p>UCSED.2.5.0.4—Applicable to the double-wide E-Series Servers (UCS-E140D-M1, UCS-E160D-M1, UCS-E160D-M2 and UCS-E180D-M2)</p> <p>UCSEM3.2.4—Applicable to the single-wide E-Series Server (UCS-E160S-M3)</p> <p>UCSEDM3.2.4—Applicable to the single-wide E-Series Server (UCS-E180D-M3 and UCS-E1120D-M3)</p> |
| 3.2.4         | 3.2.4                 | <p>UCSEN.1.5.0.5—Applicable to the EHWIC E-Series NCE and the NIM E-Series NCE (UCS-EN120E and UCS-EN140N-M2)</p> <p>UCSES.1.5.0.2—Applicable to the single-wide E-Series Server (UCS-E140S-M1)</p> <p>UCSES.1.5.0.7—Applicable to the single-wide E-Series Server (UCS-EN120S-M2 and UCS-E140S-M2)</p> <p>UCSED.2.5.0.5—Applicable to the double-wide E-Series Servers (UCS-E140D-M1, UCS-E160D-M1, UCS-E160D-M2 and UCS-E180D-M2)</p> <p>UCSEM3.2.5—Applicable to the single-wide E-Series Server (UCS-E160S-M3)</p> <p>UCSEDM3.2.5—Applicable to the single-wide E-Series Server (UCS-E180D-M3 and UCS-E1120D-M3)</p> |

# Understanding the HUU User Interface

Figure 39: HUU User Interface



| User Interface Name           | Description                                                                                           |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Id</b> column              | Displays the serial number of the component row.                                                      |
| <b>Component</b> column       | Lists the firmware components that are available for upgrade.                                         |
| <b>PCI Slot</b> column        | Display the PCI slot information for the PCI adapter components.                                      |
| <b>Current Version</b> column | Displays the current firmware version number that is installed for each of the listed components.     |
| <b>Update Version</b> column  | Displays the firmware version number that is available for upgrade for each of the listed components. |
| <b>Update Status</b> column   | Displays the status of the update for each of the listed components while the update is in progress.  |
| <b>Update</b> button          | Initiates the firmware update for a selected component.                                               |
| <b>Update All</b> button      | Initiates the firmware update for all available components.                                           |

| User Interface Name          | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Save Logs button             | Saves the log files.<br><br>If an error occurs while updating the firmware, you are prompted to save the error log. Click the <b>Save Logs</b> button to save the error logs to an externally connected USB. This log can be used to identify the cause of the error and for troubleshooting.                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Last Update Verify button    | Verifies if the update was successful.<br><br><b>Note</b> You must first reboot HUU by clicking the <b>Exit</b> button, and then click the <b>Last Update Verify</b> button to verify the last update.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Restore CIMC Defaults button | Restores the CIMC settings to factory default settings.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Exit button                  | Exits the HUU. Click <b>Yes</b> at the confirmation prompt to exit.<br><br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If you update the CIMC and not the BIOS, when you click the <b>Exit</b> button, the CIMC will get activated but you will lose connectivity to the CIMC and KVM.</li> <li>• If you select LOM for update and you are in shared LOM mode, when you click the <b>Exit</b> button, you will lose connectivity to the CIMC and KVM.</li> </ul> |
| Usage area                   | Lists keyboard shortcuts that you can use to perform specific tasks.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Current Activity area        | Provides the status of an update.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Execution Logs area          | Provides a log of activities and their status while an update is in progress.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |

## Upgrading the Firmware

### Basic Workflow for Using the HUU

1. Download the HUU ISO image from Cisco.com.
2. Use the KVM console or the CIMC CLI to map the HUU ISO image.
3. Set the boot order to make the virtual CD/DVD drive as the boot device.
4. From the HUU GUI, select all or specific firmware components to update.
5. After the firmware updates, click **Exit** to reboot the HUU.

6. Unmap the HUU ISO image.
7. Reboot the server.

## Upgrading the Firmware Using the HUU

### Procedure

---

- Step 1** Navigate to <http://www.cisco.com/>.
- Step 2** If you are not already logged in, click **Log In** at the top-right edge of the page and log in using your Cisco.com credentials.
- Step 3** In the menu bar at the top, click **Support**.  
A roll-down menu appears.
- Step 4** From the Downloads (center) pane, click **All Downloads** (located at the bottom right corner).  
The **Download Software** page appears.
- Step 5** From the left pane, click **Products**.
- Step 6** From the center pane, click **Servers—Unified Computing**.
- Step 7** From the right pane, click **Cisco UCS E-Series Software**.
- Step 8** From the right pane, click the name of the server model for which you want to download the software.  
The **Download Software** page appears.
- Step 9** Click **Unified Computing System (UCSE) Server Firmware**.
- Step 10** Click the **Download** button associated with the **Cisco UCS Host Upgrade Utility** ISO image to download the image onto your PC.  
The **End User License Agreement** dialog box appears.
- Step 11** Click **Accept License Agreement**.
- Step 12** The **Opening *ucse-server-platform-huu.iso*** dialog box appears.  
Either open the file or browse to the location where you want to save the HUU ISO image, and then click **OK**.
- Step 13** You can use either the KVM Console or the CIMC CLI to map the HUU ISO image:
- To use the KVM Console, do the following:
    - a. Use a browser to connect to the CIMC GUI on the server that you are upgrading.
    - b. In the address field of the browser, enter the CIMC IP address for that server, and then enter your username and password to log in to the CIMC GUI.
    - c. Click the **Launch KVM Console** icon on the toolbar. The KVM Console opens in a separate window.
    - d. From the KVM Console, click the **Virtual Media** tab.
    - e. Click **Add Image**, navigate to and select the Host Upgrade Utility ISO image, and then click **Open** to mount the image.

- f. In the **Client View** area, in the Mapped column, check the check box for the mounted ISO image.



- To use the CIMC CLI, download the ISO image on to an FTP or TFTP server, and then use the following commands:
  - a. Server# **scope host-image-mapping**.
  - b. Server/host-image-mapping # **download-image protocol server-ip-address huu-ISO-filename**
  - c. Server/host-image-mapping # **map-image huu-ISO-filename**.

```
Server# scope host-image-mapping
Server/host-image-mapping # download-image ftp 10.20.34.56 2.1.1.iso
Username: anonymous
Password:
Image download has started.
Please check the status using "show detail".
Server/host-image-mapping # map-image 2.1.1.iso
```

**Step 14** After the image is mapped, set the boot order to make the virtual CD/DVD drive as the boot device.

**Step 15** Reboot the server.

**Step 16** From the CIMC GUI, click the **Launch KVM Console** icon on the toolbar.

The HUU and the **Cisco Software License Agreement** page appears.

**Step 17** Click **I Agree** to accept the licensing terms and conditions.

The **Cisco Host Upgrade Utility** GUI appears with a list of components that are available for update.

| Id                       | Component | PCI slot          | Current Version | Update Version        | Update Status         |      |
|--------------------------|-----------|-------------------|-----------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 1         | CIMC              | NA              | 3.2(4.20180206163853) | 3.2(4.20180315121704) | NONE |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 2         | BIOS              | NA              | UCSEDM3_2.4           | UCSEDM3_2.5           | NONE |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 3         | Broadcom 5719 LOM | NA              | 5719-v1.38_1.2.46     | 5719-v1.38_1.2.46     | NONE |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 4         | Intel X557 LOM    | NA              | 5.7-2.b.0.9a.022      | 5.7-2.b.0.9a.026      | NONE |

Controls: Update, Update All, Update HDD Firmware, Save Logs, Last Update Verify, Restore CIMC Defaults, Help, Exit

Current Activity: No Update in Progress

Execution Logs: Copying Firmware and Tools... Firmware and Tools Copy Completed. Discovering Broadcom 1g devices successful. Discovering broadcom 1g devices successful. CIMC discovered. Collecting data... CIMC information discovery complete. BIOS discovered. Collecting data... BIOS information discovery complete. Broadcom 5719 LOM discovered. Collecting data... Broadcom 5719 LOM information discovery complete. Intel X557 LOM discovered. Collecting data... Intel X557 LOM information discovery complete. Discovery complete.

**Step 18** Do one of the following:

- To update all the listed components, click **Update all**.
- To update specific components, select the components, and then click **Update**.

The status of the update is displayed in the **Update Status** column. To view details about the update status, see the **Execution Logs** area.

**Note** We recommend that you always update the BIOS and the CIMC firmware at the same time.

**Step 19** After the firmware is updated, click **Exit**, and then click **Ok** at the confirmation prompt.

The HUU reboots.

- Important**
- If the BIOS firmware is selected for update, it will be the last one to update because it requires the host to be powered off. You can check the progress of the BIOS update from the CIMC GUI or CIMC CLI. After the BIOS update completes, you must use the CIMC GUI or the CIMC CLI to manually power on the host.
  - If the CIMC firmware is selected for update—after you click the **Exit** button from the HUU GUI—the new CIMC firmware gets automatically activated. However, if both the BIOS and CIMC firmwares are selected for update, the CIMC firmware does not get automatically activated. You must use the CIMC GUI or the CIMC CLI to manually activate the new CIMC firmware.
  - When the new CIMC firmware gets activated, you will lose network connectivity to the CIMC GUI, CIMC CLI, and virtual KVM. Also, the mapped HUU ISO image gets unmapped. To run the HUU, you must map the HUU ISO image again.
  - When the LOM firmware is updated, you might lose network connectivity to the CIMC GUI and virtual KVM.

**Step 20** Unmap the HUU ISO image. Do one of the following:

- From the CIMC GUI, click the **Launch KVM Console** icon on the toolbar, from the Mapped column, check the check box for the mounted HUU ISO image, and then click **Remove Image**.
- From the CIMC CLI, use the **unmap-image** command:
- `Server/host-image-mapping # unmap-image`

**Step 21** Reboot the server.

## Troubleshooting

| Problem                                                                              | Solution                                                                                                            |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Connection to the CIMC is lost after an update and reboot, and the KVM session ends. | This is expected behavior after a firmware update. Log back in to the CIMC, and then re-establish your KVM session. |



| Problem                                                                                                                                                                                    | Solution                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>Error Message:</p> <p><i>PID, Board-Part-Number, Product-Part-Number</i> is not supported by this HUU image. HUU will not boot on this machine. Press any key to reboot the server.</p> | <p>This error message displays when the HUU ISO image is not supported by the server. To resolve this problem, use the HUU ISO image that is supported by the server. See <a href="#">Minimum CIMC and BIOS Firmware Releases Required to Use HUU, on page 140</a>.</p> |
| <p>After using the HUU to update the Broadcom NCSI firmware, the warning prompt to update the Broadcom firmware still displays in the CIMC GUI and the CIMC CLI.</p>                       | <p>To resolve this problem, power cycle the E-Series Server to allow the new Broadcom NCSI firmware to take effect.</p>                                                                                                                                                 |

## BIOS Overview

BIOS initializes the hardware in the system. After it initializes the CPU, other chips on the motherboard get initialized. BIOS discovers bootable devices in the system and boots them in the provided sequence. It boots the operating system and configures the hardware for the operating system to use. BIOS manageability features allow you to interact with the hardware and use it. In addition, BIOS provides options to configure the system, manage firmware, and create BIOS error reports.

BIOS provides the following features:

- Option ROM to provide PCI connected device boot
- Manage virtual and physical boot devices: SCSI, FC, network, and USB
- Processor Settings
- Memory Settings
- Power Management (C-states)

BIOS supports the following standard PC compatible functionality:

- ACPI 3.0, SMBIOS 2.5, WHEA, and USB 2.0
- EFI Shell boot
- EFI native operating system boot

## Determining the Current BIOS Version

To view the current version and build number of the BIOS, press **F2** during server bootup. The **BIOS setup utility** appears. The listing on the **Main** page displays the current version and build number of the BIOS.

## Obtaining Software from Cisco Systems

Use this procedure to download BIOS and CIMC firmware.

## Procedure

---

- Step 1** Navigate to <http://www.cisco.com/>.
- Step 2** If you are not already logged in, click **Log In** at the top right-hand edge of the page and log in using your Cisco.com credentials.
- Step 3** In the menu bar at the top, click **Support**.  
A roll-down menu appears.
- Step 4** From the Downloads (center) pane, click **All Downloads** (located at the bottom right corner).  
The **Download Software** page appears.
- Step 5** From the left pane, click **Products**.
- Step 6** From the center pane, click **Unified Computing and Servers**.
- Step 7** From the right pane, click **Cisco UCS E-Series Software**.
- Step 8** From the right pane, click the name of the server model for which you want to download the software.  
The **Download Software** page appears with the following categories.
- **Unified Computing System (UCSE) Server Firmware**—Contains the Host Upgrade Utility.
- Step 9** Click the appropriate software category link.
- Step 10** Click the **Download** button associated with software image that you want to download.  
The **End User License Agreement** dialog box appears.
- Step 11** (Optional) To download multiple software images, do the following:
- a) Click the **Add to cart** button associated with the software images that you want to download.
  - b) Click the **Download Cart** button located on the top right .  
All the images that you added to the cart display.
  - c) Click the **Download All** button located at the bottom right corner to download all the images.  
The **End User License Agreement** dialog box appears.
- Step 12** Click **Accept License Agreement**.
- Step 13** Do one of the following as appropriate:
- Save the software image file to a local drive.
  - If you plan to install the software image from a TFTP server, copy the file to the TFTP server that you want to use.  
The server must have read permission for the destination folder on the TFTP server.
- 

## What to do next

Install the software image.

# Upgrading Firmware Manually

You can upgrade the firmware manually, through the browser or from a TFTP server. For details, see the *Firmware Management* chapter in the *GUI Configuration Guide for Cisco UCS E-Series Servers and the Cisco UCS E-Series Network Compute Engine* or the *CLI Configuration Guide for Cisco UCS E-Series Servers and the Cisco UCS E-Series Network Compute Engine*.

## Installing the BIOS Firmware Through the Browser



**Note** To avoid potential problems, we strongly recommend that you use the Host Upgrade Utility (HUU), which upgrades the CIMC, BIOS, and other firmware components to compatible levels. For detailed information about this utility, see the "Upgrading Firmware" chapter in the *Getting Started Guide for Cisco UCS E-Series Servers and the Cisco UCS E-Series Network Compute Engine*. This chapter also provides information about the compatible HUU, CIMC, and BIOS software releases.

If you choose to upgrade the CIMC and BIOS firmware manually—instead of using the HUU—you must update the CIMC firmware first, and then the BIOS firmware. Do not install the new BIOS firmware until after you have activated the compatible CIMC firmware or the server will not boot.

### Before you begin

- Log in to CIMC as a user with admin privileges.
- Obtain the CIMC firmware file from Cisco Systems. See [Obtaining Software from Cisco Systems, on page 100](#).
- Unzip the proper upgrade file to your local machine.

### Procedure

- 
- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** menu.
  - Step 2** On the **Server** tab, click **BIOS**.
  - Step 3** In the **Firmware Actions** area, click **Install BIOS Firmware through Browser Client**.
  - Step 4** In the **Install BIOS Firmware** dialog box, click **Browse** and use the **Choose File** dialog box to select the file to install.
  - Step 5** Click **Install Firmware**.

The BIOS is downloaded, the host is powered off, the BIOS is upgraded, and then the host is powered on.

---

## Installing the BIOS Firmware from a TFTP Server



**Note** To avoid potential problems, we strongly recommend that you use the Host Upgrade Utility (HUU), which upgrades the CIMC, BIOS, and other firmware components to compatible levels. For detailed information about this utility, see the "Upgrading Firmware" chapter in the *Getting Started Guide for Cisco UCS E-Series Servers and the Cisco UCS E-Series Network Compute Engine*. This chapter also provides information about the compatible HUU, CIMC, and BIOS software releases.

If you choose to upgrade the CIMC and BIOS firmware manually—instead of using the HUU—you must update the CIMC firmware first, and then the BIOS firmware. Do not install the new BIOS firmware until after you have activated the compatible CIMC firmware or the server will not boot.

### Before you begin

- Log in to CIMC as a user with admin privileges.
- Obtain the CIMC firmware file from Cisco Systems. See [Obtaining Software from Cisco Systems, on page 100](#).
- Unzip the proper upgrade file on your TFTP server.

### Procedure

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** menu.
- Step 2** On the **Server** tab, click **BIOS**.
- Step 3** In the **Firmware Actions** area, click **Install BIOS Firmware from TFTP Server**.
- Step 4** In the **Install BIOS Firmware** dialog box, complete the following fields:

| Name                                 | Description                                                                                                                                                                |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>TFTP Server IP Address</b> field  | The IP address of the TFTP server on which the BIOS firmware image resides.                                                                                                |
| <b>Image Path and Filename</b> field | The BIOS firmware image filename on the server. When you enter this name, include the relative path for the image file from the top of the TFTP tree to the file location. |

- Step 5** Click **Install Firmware**.
- The BIOS is downloaded, the host is powered off, the BIOS is upgraded, and then the host is powered on.

## Accessing the BIOS Setup Menu

You can access the BIOS Setup menu in two ways:

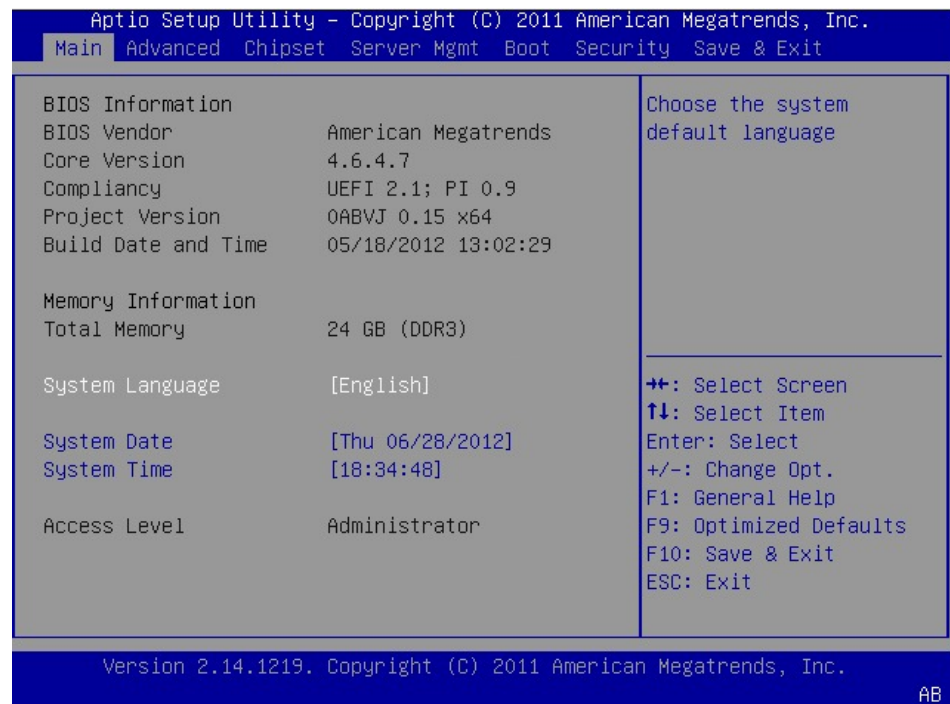
- Through CIMC from the KVM console.
- Through a console that is physically attached to the E-Series Server.

## Accessing the BIOS Setup Menu from the KVM Console

### Procedure

- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** menu.
- Step 2** In the work pane, click **Host Image Mapping** tab.
- Step 3** From the **Actions** area, click **Launch KVM Console**.
- The **KVM Console** opens in a separate window.
- Step 4** From the **Server Summary** page, click **Power Cycle Server** to reboot the server.
- Step 5** To access the BIOS setup menu, press **F2** during bootstrap.
- The **Aptio Setup Utility** appears, which provides the BIOS setup menu options.

*Figure 40: BIOS Setup Menu*



The following table provides information about the BIOS setup menu tabs.

| Tabs | Description |
|------|-------------|
|------|-------------|

|                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Main</b> tab        | Provides the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• General information about the BIOS version, system memory, and access level</li> <li>• Settings to define the system date, time, and language</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <b>Advanced</b> tab    | Allows you to do the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enable or disable boot option for legacy network devices and legacy mass storage devices with option ROM</li> <li>• Configure PCI, PCI-X, and PCI express, trusted computing settings, and WHEA configuration settings</li> <li>• Configure CPU, thermal, USB, and system IO chip parameters</li> <li>• Configure runtime error logging support setup options</li> <li>• Configure console redirection to the serial port</li> </ul>                  |
| <b>Chipset</b> tab     | Allows you to do the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Define North Bridge, South Bridge, and ME subsystem parameters</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>Server Mgmt</b> tab | Provides the self test status of CIMC and allows you to do the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enable or disable interfaces to communicate with CIMC</li> <li>• Enable or disable FRB-2 timer</li> <li>• Configure the FRB-2 timer expiration value and configure how the system responds when the FRB-2 timer expires</li> <li>• Enable or disable the OS watchdog timer</li> <li>• Log the report returned by the CIMC self test command</li> <li>• Change the system event log configuration</li> </ul> |

|                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Boot tab</b>            | <p>Allows you to do the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Configure the time in seconds the system should wait for the setup activation key</li> <li>• Enable or disable the keyboard NumLock keys</li> <li>• Define boot order rules</li> <li>• Configure Gate A20 parameters</li> <li>• Enable or disable CSM support</li> <li>• Define boot order for devices in the following groups: hard disk drives, network devices, CDROM, DVD, and floppy drives</li> </ul> |
| <b>Security tab</b>        | <p>Allows you to do the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Define or change the BIOS administrator and user passwords</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <b>Save &amp; Exit tab</b> | <p>Provides options to do the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Save changes, discard changes, or restore the configuration to its default settings</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |

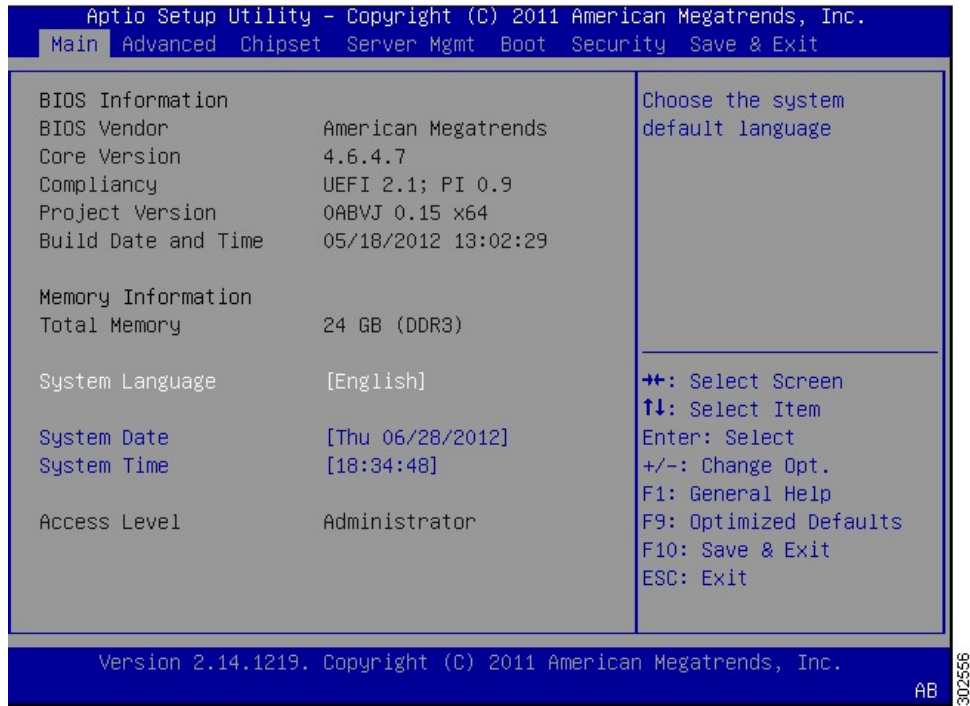
## Changing Configuration Using the BIOS Setup Menu

Use this procedure to change the BIOS settings for your server. Detailed instructions are also printed on the BIOS pages.

### Procedure

- 
- Step 1** In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** menu.
- Step 2** In the work pane, click **Host Image Mapping** tab.
- Step 3** From the **Actions** area, click **Launch KVM Console**.
- The **KVM Console** opens in a separate window.
- Step 4** From the **Server Summary** page, click **Power Cycle Server** to reboot the server.
- Step 5** To access the BIOS setup menu, press **F2** during bootup.
- The **Aptio Setup Utility** appears, which provides the BIOS setup menu options.

Figure 41: BIOS Setup Menu



**Step 6** To navigate between menu items, use the **right** or **left arrow keys** on your keyboard.

**Step 7** To modify a field, do the following:

- a) Use the **Up** or **Down arrow keys** on your keyboard to highlight the field to be modified.
- b) Press **Enter** to select the highlighted field, and then change the value in the field.
- c) Do one of the following:
  - To save changes and exit the BIOS setup, press **F4**.
  - To exit without saving changes, press **Esc**.

**Step 8** To enable or disable a field, press the **space bar** on your keyboard.





# APPENDIX A

## Configuration Differences

This appendix includes the following sections:

- [Router Configuration Differences Between the Cisco SRE-V and the E-Series Server—Cisco ISR G2, on page 157](#)
- [Router Configuration Differences Between the Cisco ISR G2 and the Cisco ISR 4000 Series, on page 158](#)
- [Router Configuration Differences Between the E-Series Server and the EHWIC E-Series NCE—Cisco ISR G2, on page 159](#)
- [Router Configuration Differences Between the E-Series Server and the NIM E-Series NCE—Cisco ISR 4000 Series, on page 160](#)
- [VMware vSphere Hypervisor Configuration Differences, on page 161](#)

### Router Configuration Differences Between the Cisco SRE-V and the E-Series Server—Cisco ISR G2

The examples in the following table provide the key differences between the Cisco SRE-V and the E-Series Server configuration.

**Table 7: Differences in Router Configuration Between the Cisco SRE-V and the E-Series Server—Cisco ISR G2**

| Cisco SRE-V Configuration                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Cisco E-Series Server Configuration                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <pre>interface GigabitEthernet0/0 ip address 10.0.0.1 255.0.0.0  interface sm 1/0 ip unnumbered GigabitEthernet0/0 service-module ip address 10.0.0.2 255.0.0.0 service-module ip default-gateway 10.0.0.1  interface SM1/1 switchport mode trunk  ip route 10.0.0.2 255.255.255.255 sm1/0</pre> | <pre>interface GigabitEthernet0/0 ip address 10.0.0.1 255.0.0.0  interface ucse 1/0 ip unnumbered GigabitEthernet0/0 imc ip address 10.0.0.2 255.0.0.0 default-gateway 10.0.0.1 imc access-port shared-lom console  interface ucse1/1 switchport mode trunk  ip route 10.0.0.2 255.255.255.255 ucse1/0</pre> |

Note the following differences:

- In the E-Series Server, the **sm slot/port** command is replaced by the **ucse slot/port** command.
- In the E-Series Server, the **service-module** keyword is replaced by the **imc** keyword.
- In the E-Series Server, the **default gateway** command resides in the same command line as the **imc ip address** command.
- Since the E-Series Server has different external interfaces, you must specify the access port using the **imc access-port** command.
- In the E-Series Server, you can either use the dedicated interface or one of the shared local area network on motherboard (shared LOM) interfaces to configure CIMC access. See [Configuring Access to the Management Firmware](#), on page 23.

In the above example, the **imc access-port shared-lom console** command uses the console interface for CIMC access, where:

- **imc access-port**—is the physical Ethernet connection to the E-Series Server.
- **shared-lom**—is shared LOM.
- **console**—is the router interface.

The command to session into the server has also changed:

- The Cisco SRE-V uses the **service-module sm slot/0 session** command to session into the server.
- The E-Series Server uses the **ucse slot session {imc | host}** command to session into the server.

## Router Configuration Differences Between the Cisco ISR G2 and the Cisco ISR 4000 Series

The examples in the following table provide the key differences between the Cisco ISR G2 configuration and the Cisco ISR 4000 series configuration.

**Table 8: Differences in Router Configuration Between the Cisco ISR G2 and the Cisco ISR 4000 Series**

| Cisco ISR G2 Configuration                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Cisco ISR 4000 Series Configuration                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <pre>interface GigabitEthernet0/0 ip address 10.0.0.1 255.0.0.0  interface ucse 1/0 ip unnumbered GigabitEthernet0/0 imc ip address 10.0.0.2 255.0.0.0 default-gateway 10.0.0.1 imc access-port shared-lom console  interface ucse1/1 switchport mode trunk  ip route 10.0.0.2 255.255.255.255 ucse1/0</pre> | <pre>interface GigabitEthernet 0/0/0 ip address 10.0.0.1 255.0.0.0  ucse subslot 1/0 imc access-port shared-lom console imc ip address 10.0.0.2 255.0.0.0 default-gateway 10.0.0.1  interface ucse1/0/0 ip unnumbered GigabitEthernet0/0/0 no negotiation auto switchport mode trunk  ip route 10.0.0.2 255.255.255.255 ucse1/0/0</pre> |

Note the following differences:

- In the Cisco ISR 4000 series, the **interface ucse slot/port** command is replaced by the **ucse subslot slot/subslot** and the **interface ucse slot/subslot/port** commands.
- In the Cisco ISR G2, you can use either the dedicated interface or one of the shared local area network on motherboard (shared LOM) interfaces to configure CIMC access.

In the Cisco ISR 4000 series, you can use either the management interface or one of the NIC interfaces to configure CIMC access. See [Configuring Access to the Management Firmware](#), on page 23.

In the above example, the command configures CIMC access using the E-Series Server's internal GE0 NIC interface, where:

- **imc access-port**—CIMC access port configuration.
- **ge0**—E-Series Server's internal GE0 NIC interface.

The command to session into the server has also changed:

- In the Cisco ISR G2, you use the **ucse slot session {imc | host}** command to session into the server.
- In the Cisco ISR 4000 series, you use the **hw-module subslot slot/0 session {imc | server}** command to session into the server.

## Router Configuration Differences Between the E-Series Server and the EHWIC E-Series NCE—Cisco ISR G2

The examples in the following table provide the key differences between the E-Series Server configuration and the EHWIC E-Series NCE configuration.

**Table 9: Differences in Router Configuration Between the E-Series Server and the EHWIC E-Series NCE**

| E-Series Server Configuration                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | EHWIC E-Series NCE Configuration                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <pre>interface GigabitEthernet0/0  ip address 10.0.0.1 255.0.0.0  interface ucse 1/0  ip unnumbered GigabitEthernet0/0  imc ip address 10.0.0.2 255.0.0.0 default-gateway  10.0.0.1  imc access-port shared-lom console  interface ucse 1/1  switchport mode trunk  ip route 10.0.0.2 255.255.255.255 ucse 1/0</pre> | <pre>interface GigabitEthernet0/0  ip address 10.0.0.1 255.0.0.0  interface ucse 0/1/0  ip unnumbered GigabitEthernet0/0  imc ip address 10.0.0.2 255.0.0.0 default-gateway  10.0.0.1  imc access-port shared-lom console  interface ucse 0/1/1  switchport mode trunk  ip route 10.0.0.2 255.255.255.255 ucse 0/3/0</pre> |

Note the following differences:

- In the EHWIC E-Series NCE, the **interface ucse slot/port** command is replaced by the **interface ucse 0/subslot/port** command.

- In the EHWIC E-Series NCE, the **ip route** *cimc-ip-address subnet-mask ucse slot/port* command is replaced by the **ip route** *cimc-ip-address subnet-mask ucse 0/subslot/port* command.
- In Cisco IOS Release 15.4(3)M, for both the E-Series Servers and NCEs, all **ucse slot x** commands are replaced by the **ucse subslot slot/subslot x** command.

## Router Configuration Differences Between the E-Series Server and the NIM E-Series NCE—Cisco ISR 4000 Series

The examples in the following table provide the key differences between the E-Series Server configuration and the NIM E-Series NCE configuration.

**Table 10: Differences in Router Configuration Between the E-Series Server and the NIM E-Series NCE**

| E-Series Server Configuration                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | NIM E-Series NCE Configuration                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <pre>interface GigabitEthernet 0/0/0 ip address 10.0.0.1 255.0.0.0  ucse subslot 1/0 imc access-port shared-lom console imc ip address 10.0.0.2 255.0.0.0 default-gateway 10.0.0.1  interface ucse1/0/0 ip unnumbered GigabitEthernet0/0/0 no negotiation auto switchport mode trunk  ip route 10.0.0.2 255.255.255.255 ucse1/0/0</pre> | <pre>interface GigabitEthernet 0/0/0 ip address 10.0.0.1 255.0.0.0  ucse subslot 0/1 imc access-port shared-lom console imc ip address 10.0.0.2 255.0.0.0 default-gateway 10.0.0.1  interface ucse0/1/0 ip unnumbered GigabitEthernet0/0/0 no negotiation auto switchport mode trunk  ip route 10.0.0.2 255.255.255.255 ucse0/1/0</pre> |

Note the following differences:

- In the NIM E-Series NCE, the **ucse subslot slot/port** command is replaced by the **ucse subslot port/slot** command.
- In the NIM E-Series NCE, the **interface ucse slot/port/subport** command is replaced by the **interface ucse port/slot/subport** command.

The command to session into the server has also changed:

- For the E-Series Server installed in the Cisco ISR 4000 series, you use the **hw-module subslot slot/0 session {imc | server}** command to session into the E-Series Server.
- For the NIM E-Series NCE installed in the Cisco ISR 4000 series, you use the **hw-module subslot 0/slot session {imc | server}** command to session into the NIM E-Series NCE.

## VMware vSphere Hypervisor Configuration Differences

In the Cisco SRE-V, the IP address of the VMware vSphere Hypervisor host is the same as the IP address of the service module. For example, in the Cisco SRE-V, **service-module ip address 10.0.0.2** (see table) is also assigned to the VMware vSphere Hypervisor host.

**Table 11: Differences in Router Configuration Between the Cisco SRE-V and the E-Series Server—ISR G2**

| Cisco SRE-V Configuration                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Cisco E-Series Server Configuration                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <pre>interface GigabitEthernet0/0 ip address 10.0.0.1 255.0.0.0  interface sm 1/0 ip unnumbered GigabitEthernet0/0 <b>service-module ip address 10.0.0.2</b> 255.0.0.0 service-module ip default-gateway 10.0.0.1  interface SM1/1   switchport mode trunk  ip route 10.0.0.2 255.255.255.255 sm1/0</pre> | <pre>interface GigabitEthernet0/0 ip address 10.0.0.1 255.0.0.0  interface ucse 1/0 ip unnumbered GigabitEthernet0/0 <b>imc ip address 10.0.0.2</b> 255.0.0.0 default-gateway 10.0.0.1 imc access-port shared-lom console  interface ucse1/1   switchport mode trunk  ip route 10.0.0.2 255.255.255.255 ucse1/0</pre> |

However, with the E-Series Server, the IMC IP address, which is also 10.0.0.2 (see the example above), is reserved for CIMC access. You enter this IP address (10.0.0.2) on your web browser to access the CIMC GUI.

In the E-Series Server, either the VMware vSphere Hypervisor assigns an IP address to the host using DHCP, or you can choose to assign a static IP address to the VMware vSphere Hypervisor host. See [Assigning a Static IP Address to the VMware vSphere Hypervisor, on page 103](#).





## APPENDIX **B**

# Cisco IOS Software Command Reference—Cisco ISR G2

---

This appendix provides the new Cisco IOS commands that were introduced for the E-Series Servers and NCE installed in the Cisco ISR G2.



---

**Note** The Cisco IOS commands are sometimes updated after original publication; therefore, for updated content, review the *Cisco IOS Interface and Hardware Component Command Reference* at <http://www.cisco.com/en/US/docs/ios-xml/ios/interface/command/ir-cr-book.html>.

---

This appendix includes the following sections:

- [imc ip address default-gateway](#), on page 164
- [imc ip address dhcp](#), on page 164
- [imc vlan](#), on page 165
- [ucse cmos-reset](#), on page 165
- [ucse password-reset](#), on page 166
- [ucse session](#), on page 168
- [ucse shutdown](#), on page 169
- [ucse statistics](#), on page 170
- [ucse status](#), on page 171
- [ucse stop](#), on page 173
- [Installation Commands](#), on page 174
- [Password Reset Command](#), on page 175
- [Session Command](#), on page 175
- [IP Address Configuration Commands](#), on page 175
- [CIMC Access Commands](#), on page 175
- [VLAN Command](#), on page 175
- [Reload, Reset, Start, Stop, Shutdown Commands](#), on page 176
- [RAID Commands](#), on page 176
- [Statistics and Status Commands](#), on page 177
- [Boot Commands](#), on page 177
- [Erase Hard Drive Commands](#), on page 177

## imc ip address default-gateway

To configure a static IP address for CIMC and the IP address of the default gateway router that CIMC must use, use the **imc ip address default-gateway** command in interface configuration mode. To remove the static IP address, use the **no** form of this command.

**imc ip address** *ip-address subnet-mask default-gateway gateway-address*  
**no imc ip address** *ip-address subnet-mask default-gateway gateway-address*

### Syntax Description

|                        |                                                                                         |
|------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>ip-address</i>      | IP address of CIMC.                                                                     |
| <i>subnet-mask</i>     | Subnet mask to append to the IP address; must be in the same subnet as the host router. |
| <i>gateway-address</i> | IP address of the default gateway router.                                               |

### Command Modes

Interface configuration (config-if)

### Command History

| Release  | Modification                 |
|----------|------------------------------|
| 15.2(4)M | This command was introduced. |

### Usage Guidelines

If you do not enable DHCP, you must specify a static IP address and subnet mask.

### Examples

The following example shows how to configure a static IP address for CIMC:

```
Router(config)# interface ucse 2/0
Router(config-if)# imc ip address 10.0.0.2 255.0.0.0 default-gateway 10.0.0.1
```

## imc ip address dhcp

To configure a DHCP IP address for CIMC, use the **imc ip address dhcp** command in interface configuration mode. To remove the DHCP IP address, use the **no** form of the this command.

**imc ip address dhcp**  
**no imc ip address dhcp**

### Syntax Description

This command has no arguments or keywords.

### Command Modes

Interface configuration (config-if)

### Command History

| Release  | Modification                 |
|----------|------------------------------|
| 15.2(4)M | This command was introduced. |



**Examples**

The following example shows how to configure a DHCP IP address for CIMC:

```
Router(config)# interface ucse 2/0
Router(config-if)# imc ip address dhcp
```

## imc vlan

To enter VLAN configuration mode for the specified VLAN number, use the **imc vlan** command in interface configuration mode. To remove the VLAN configuration, use the **no** form of this command.

```
imc vlan vlan-number
no imc vlan vlan-number
```

**Syntax Description**

|                    |                                   |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>vlan-number</i> | IP address of the remote manager. |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------|

**Command Modes**

Interface configuration (config-if)

**Command History**

| Release  | Modification                 |
|----------|------------------------------|
| 15.2(4)M | This command was introduced. |

**Examples**

The following example shows how to enter VLAN configuration mode in CIMC for a specified VLAN:

```
Router(config)# interface ucse 2/0
Router(config-if)# interface vlan 40
```

## ucse cmos-reset

To reset the BIOS CMOS, use the **ucse cmos-reset** command in privileged EXEC mode.

**E-Series Servers Installed in an ISR G2—Applicable from Cisco IOS Release 15.2(4)M to 15.4(2)T**

```
ucse slot cmos-reset
```

**E-Series Servers and EHWIC E-Series NCE Installed in an ISR G2—Applicable in Cisco IOS Release 15.4(3)M**

```
ucse subslot slot/subslot cmos-reset
```

**Syntax Description**

|              |                                                                    |
|--------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>slot/</i> | Number of the router slot in which the server module is installed. |
| <b>Note</b>  | For the EHWIC E-Series NCE, the slot number is 0.                  |

|                |                                                                                  |
|----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>subslot</i> | Number of the subslot in which the server module is installed.                   |
| <b>Note</b>    | For Cisco UCS E-Series Servers and the SM E-Series NCE, the subslot number is 0. |

**Command Modes**

Privileged EXEC (#)

**Command History**

| Release  | Modification                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|----------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 15.2(4)M | This command was introduced.<br><br>This command was supported on Cisco UCS E-Series Servers (E-Series Server) installed in an ISR G2.                                                                               |
| 15.4(3)M | This command was modified to include the <b>subslot</b> keyword.<br><br>This command was supported on an additional platform: the EHWIC E-Series Network Compute Engine (EHWIC E-Series NCE) installed in an ISR G2. |

**Usage Guidelines**

This command sets the BIOS CMOS back to the factory defaults. User changes made in the BIOS will be lost.

**Examples**

The following example shows how to reset the BIOS CMOS in an E-Series Server installed in an ISR G2—Applicable from Cisco IOS Release 15.2(4)M to 15.4(2)T:

```
Router# ucse 2 cmos-reset
```

**Examples**

The following example shows how to reset the BIOS CMOS in an E-Series Server or EHWIC E-Series NCE installed in an ISR G2—Applicable in Cisco IOS Release 15.4(3)M:

```
Router# ucse subslot 0/3 cmos-reset
```

## ucse password-reset

To reset the BIOS, CIMC, or RAID password, use the **ucse password-reset** command in privileged EXEC mode.

**E-Series Servers Installed in an ISR G2—Applicable from Cisco IOS Release 15.2(4)M to 15.4(2)T**

```
ucse slot password-reset {BIOS | BMC | RAID}
```

**E-Series Servers and EHWIC E-Series NCE Installed in an ISR G2—Applicable in Cisco IOS Release 15.4(3)M**

```
ucse subslot slot/subslot password-reset {BIOS | BMC | RAID}
```

|                           |                |                                                                                                                                                                |
|---------------------------|----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Syntax Description</b> | <i>slot</i>    | Number of the router slot in which the server module is installed.<br><b>Note</b> For the EHWIC E-Series NCE, the slot number is 0.                            |
|                           | <i>subslot</i> | Number of the subslot in which the server module is installed.<br><b>Note</b> For Cisco UCS E-Series Servers and the SM E-Series NCE, the subslot number is 0. |
|                           | <b>BIOS</b>    | Resets the BIOS password.                                                                                                                                      |
|                           | <b>BMC</b>     | Resets the CIMC password.                                                                                                                                      |
|                           | <b>RAID</b>    | Resets the RAID password.<br><b>Note</b> RAID is not applicable for the EHWIC E-Series Network Compute Engine (EHWIC E-Series NCE).                            |

**Command Modes**

Privileged EXEC (#)

**Command History**

| Release  | Modification                                                                                                                                                             |
|----------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 15.2(4)M | This command was introduced.<br>This command was supported on Cisco UCS E-Series Servers (E-Series Server) installed in an ISR G2.                                       |
| 15.4(3)M | This command was modified to include the <b>subslot</b> keyword.<br>This command was supported on an additional platform: the EHWIC E-Series NCE installed in an ISR G2. |

**Usage Guidelines**

After this command has been entered, the system requests that a new password be set when accessing the BIOS or BMC.

RAID is not applicable for the EHWIC E-Series NCE.

**Examples**

The following example shows how to reset the BIOS password in an E-Series Server installed in an ISR G2—Applicable from Cisco IOS Release 15.2(4)M to 15.4(2)T:

```
Router# ucse 2 password-reset BIOS
Reset command sent
```

**Examples**

The following example shows how to reset the BIOS password in an E-Series Server or EHWIC E-Series NCE installed in an ISR G2—Applicable in Cisco IOS Release 15.4(3)M:

```
Router# ucse subslot 0/3 password-reset BIOS
Reset command sent
```

## ucse session

To start or close a host or CIMC session, use the **ucse session** command in privileged EXEC mode.

### E-Series Servers Installed in an ISR G2—Applicable from Cisco IOS Release 15.2(4)M to 15.4(2)T

```
ucse slot session {imc [clear] | host [clear]}
```

### E-Series Servers and EHWIC E-Series NCE Installed in an ISR G2—Applicable in Cisco IOS Release 15.4(3)M

```
ucse subslot slot/subslot session {imc [clear] | host [clear]}
```



**Note** The **ucse slot session imc** command will work only if you have configured a router-side IP address (for instance, ip unnumbered GigabitEthernet0/0) on the interface.

### Syntax Description

*slot* Number of the router slot in which the server module is installed.

**Note** For the EHWIC E-Series NCE, the slot number is 0.

*subslot* Number of the subslot in which the server module is installed.

**Note** For Cisco UCS E-Series Servers and the SM E-Series NCE, the subslot number is 0.

**imc** Starts a session with CIMC.

**imc clear** Closes the existing CIMC session.

**host** Starts a session with the host Cisco E-Series Server.

**host clear** Closes the host Cisco E-Series Server session.

### Command Modes

Privileged EXEC (#)

### Command History

| Release  | Modification                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|----------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 15.2(4)M | This command was introduced.<br><br>This command was supported on Cisco UCS E-Series Servers (E-Series Server) installed in an ISR G2.                                                                               |
| 15.4(3)M | This command was modified to include the <b>subslot</b> keyword.<br><br>This command was supported on an additional platform: the EHWIC E-Series Network Compute Engine (EHWIC E-Series NCE) installed in an ISR G2. |

**Usage Guidelines**

The **imc clear** and **host clear** commands close the active session of the CIMC or the host. As a result, the system closes the sessions of any other users currently logged in.

Only one active session is allowed in the CIMC or host at any time. If you receive a “connection refused” message when sessioning in, close the current active session by entering the **imc clear** or **host clear** commands.

**Examples**

The following example shows how to clear the CIMC session in an E-Series Server installed in an ISR G2—Applicable from Cisco IOS Release 15.2(4)M to 15.4(2)T:

```
Router# ucse 2 session imc clear
```

**Examples**

The following example shows how to clear the CIMC session in an E-Series Server or EHWIC E-Series NCE installed in an ISR G2—Applicable in Cisco IOS Release 15.4(3)M:

```
Router# ucse subslot 0/3 session imc clear
```

## ucse shutdown

To shut down the system gracefully, use the **ucse shutdown** command in privileged EXEC mode.

**E-Series Servers Installed in an ISR G2—Applicable from Cisco IOS Release 15.2(4)M to 15.4(2)T**

```
ucse slot shutdown
```

**E-Series Servers and EHWIC E-Series NCE Installed in an ISR G2—Applicable in Cisco IOS Release 15.4(3)M**

```
ucse subslot slot/subslot shutdown
```

**Syntax Description**

|                |                                                                                                                                                                |
|----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>slot</i>    | Number of the router slot in which the server module is installed.<br><b>Note</b> For the EHWIC E-Series NCE, the slot number is 0.                            |
| <i>subslot</i> | Number of the subslot in which the server module is installed.<br><b>Note</b> For Cisco UCS E-Series Servers and the SM E-Series NCE, the subslot number is 0. |

**Command Modes**

Privileged EXEC (#)

**Command History**

| Release  | Modification                                                                                                                           |
|----------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 15.2(4)M | This command was introduced.<br><br>This command was supported on Cisco UCS E-Series Servers (E-Series Server) installed in an ISR G2. |

| Release  | Modification                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|----------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 15.4(3)M | This command was modified to include the <b>subslot</b> keyword.<br><br>This command was supported on an additional platform: the EHWIC E-Series Network Compute Engine (EHWIC E-Series NCE) installed in an ISR G2. |

**Usage Guidelines**

Use this command when removing or replacing a hot-swappable module during online insertion and removal (OIR).

**Examples**

The following example shows how to gracefully shut down an E-Series Server installed in an ISR G2—Applicable from Cisco IOS Release 15.2(4)M to 15.4(2)T:

```
Router# ucse 2 shutdown
```

**Examples**

The following example shows how to gracefully shut down an E-Series Server or EHWIC E-Series NCE installed in an ISR G2—Applicable in Cisco IOS Release 15.4(3)M:

```
Router# ucse subslot 0/3 shutdown
```

## ucse statistics

To display or clear the reset and reload server information, use the **ucse statistics** command in privileged EXEC mode.

**E-Series Servers Installed in an ISR G2—Applicable from Cisco IOS Release 15.2(4)M to 15.4(2)T**

```
ucse slot statistics [clear]
```

**E-Series Servers and EHWIC E-Series NCE Installed in an ISR G2—Applicable in Cisco IOS Release 15.4(3)M**

```
ucse subslot slot/subslot statistics [clear]
```

**Syntax Description**

|                |                                                                                                                                                                    |
|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>slot</i>    | Number of the router slot in which the server module is installed.<br><br><b>Note</b> For the EHWIC E-Series NCE, the slot number is 0.                            |
| <i>subslot</i> | Number of the subslot in which the server module is installed.<br><br><b>Note</b> For Cisco UCS E-Series Servers and the SM E-Series NCE, the subslot number is 0. |
| <b>clear</b>   | (Optional) Clears the E-Series Server's reset and reload information.                                                                                              |

**Command Modes**

Privileged EXEC (#)

| Command History | Release  | Modification                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|-----------------|----------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                 | 15.2(4)M | This command was introduced.<br><br>This command was supported on Cisco UCS E-Series Servers (E-Series Server) installed in an ISR G2.                                                                               |
|                 | 15.4(3)M | This command was modified to include the <b>subslot</b> keyword.<br><br>This command was supported on an additional platform: the EHWIC E-Series Network Compute Engine (EHWIC E-Series NCE) installed in an ISR G2. |

### Examples

The following example shows how to display the server statistics in an E-Series Server installed in an ISR G2—Applicable from Cisco IOS Release 15.2(4)M to 15.4(2)T:

```
Router# ucse 2 statistics

Module Reset Statistics:
 CLI reset count = 0
 CLI reload count = 0
 Registration request timeout reset count = 0
 Error recovery timeout reset count = 0
 Module registration count = 1
```

### Examples

The following example shows how to display the server statistics in an E-Series Server or EHWIC E-Series NCE installed in an ISR G2—Applicable in Cisco IOS Release 15.4(3)M:

```
Router# ucse subslot 0/3 statistics

Module Reset Statistics:
 CLI reset count = 0
 CLI reload count = 0
 Registration request timeout reset count = 0
 Error recovery timeout reset count = 0
 Module registration count = 1
```

## ucse status

To display configuration information related to the hardware and software of a server, use the **ucse status** command in privileged EXEC mode.

### E-Series Servers Installed in an ISR G2—Applicable from Cisco IOS Release 15.2(4)M to 15.4(2)T

**ucse slot status [detailed]**

### E-Series Servers and EHWIC E-Series NCE Installed in an ISR G2—Applicable in Cisco IOS Release 15.4(3)M

**ucse subslot slot/subslot status [detailed]**

**Syntax Description**

|                 |                                                                                                                                                                      |
|-----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>slot/</i>    | Number of the router slot in which the server module is installed.<br><b>Note</b> For the EHWIC E-Series NCE, the slot number is 0.                                  |
| <i>subslot</i>  | Number of the subslot in which the server module is installed.<br><b>Note</b> For Cisco UCS E-Series Servers and the SM E-Series NCE, the subslot number is 0.       |
| <b>detailed</b> | (Optional) Displays detail information about the Cisco E-Series Server such as the status of the service module and settings of the reset and heartbeat-reset flags. |

**Command Modes**

Privileged EXEC (#)

**Command History**

| Release  | Modification                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|----------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 15.2(4)M | This command was introduced.<br>This command was supported on Cisco UCS E-Series Servers (E-Series Server) installed in an ISR G2.                                                                               |
| 15.4(3)M | This command was modified to include the <b>subslot</b> keyword.<br>This command was supported on an additional platform: the EHWIC E-Series Network Compute Engine (EHWIC E-Series NCE) installed in an ISR G2. |

**Examples**

The following example shows how to display server status in an E-Series Server installed in an ISR G2—Applicable from Cisco IOS Release 15.2(4)M to 15.4(2)T:

```
Router# ucse 2 status

Service Module is Cisco ucse 2/0
Service Module supports session via TTY line 131
Service Module is in Steady state
Service Module reset on error is disabled
Service Module heartbeat-reset is enabled
```

**Examples**

The following example shows how to display server status in an E-Series Server or EHWIC E-Series NCE installed in an ISR G2—Applicable in Cisco IOS Release 15.4(3)M:

```
Router# ucse subslot 0/3 status

Service Module is Cisco ucse 0/3
Service Module supports session via TTY line 131
Service Module is in Steady state
Service Module reset on error is disabled
Service Module heartbeat-reset is enabled
```



## ucse stop

To immediately power down the server, use the **ucse stop** command in privileged EXEC mode.

### E-Series Servers Installed in an ISR G2—Applicable from Cisco IOS Release 15.2(4)M to 15.4(2)T

**ucse slot stop**

### E-Series Servers and EHWIC E-Series NCE Installed in an ISR G2—Applicable in Cisco IOS Release 15.4(3)M

**ucse subslot slot/subslot stop**

#### Syntax Description

|                |                                                                                                                                                                |
|----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>slot</i>    | Number of the router slot in which the server module is installed.<br><b>Note</b> For the EHWIC E-Series NCE, the slot number is 0.                            |
| <i>subslot</i> | Number of the subslot in which the server module is installed.<br><b>Note</b> For Cisco UCS E-Series Servers and the SM E-Series NCE, the subslot number is 0. |

#### Command Modes

Privileged EXEC (#)

#### Command History

| Release  | Modification                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|----------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 15.2(4)M | This command was introduced.<br><br>This command was supported on Cisco UCS E-Series Servers (E-Series Server) installed in an ISR G2.                                                                               |
| 15.4(3)M | This command was modified to include the <b>subslot</b> keyword.<br><br>This command was supported on an additional platform: the EHWIC E-Series Network Compute Engine (EHWIC E-Series NCE) installed in an ISR G2. |

#### Examples

The following example shows how to power down an E-Series Server installed in an ISR G2—Applicable from Cisco IOS Release 15.2(4)M to 15.4(2)T:

```
Router# ucse 2 stop

Send server stop command
```

#### Examples

The following example shows how to power down an E-Series Server or EHWIC E-Series NCE installed in an ISR G2—Applicable in Cisco IOS Release 15.4(3)M:

```
Router# ucse subslot 0/3 stop
```

```
Send server stop command
```

## Installation Commands

| Commands                                            | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|-----------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>ucse slot imc config {restore   save} url</b>    | Saves the CIMC configuration to a file on the router's flash drive or restores the CIMC configuration from a file on the router's flash drive. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>slot</i>—Router slot number in which the E-Series Server is installed.</li> <li>• <b>restore</b>—Restores the CIMC configuration from a file.</li> <li>• <b>save</b>—Saves the CIMC configuration to a file.</li> <li>• <i>url</i>—The url where the configuration file is located.</li> </ul> |
| <b>ucse slot imc file delete file_name</b>          | Deletes the CIMC image file. The file must have .iso as the file extension. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>slot</i>—Router slot number in which the E-Series Server is installed.</li> <li>• <i>file_name</i>—Name of the CIMC image file to delete.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> The name of the file must exactly match the name of the file as displayed by the output of the <b>show ucse slot imc files</b> command.</p>                                                   |
| <b>ucse slot imc file download {URLurl   abort}</b> | Downloads the CIMC image file in the background to an internal storage device. The file must have .iso as the file extension. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>slot</i>—Router slot number in which the E-Series Server is installed.</li> <li>• <i>url</i>—Downloads the file from the specified location.</li> <li>• <b>abort</b>—Aborts the file download operation.</li> </ul>                                                                                             |
| <b>imc config file file_name</b>                    | Stores the CIMC configuration file into the running configuration. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>file_name</i>—The name of the CIMC configuration file that you want to store.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>show ucse slot imc download progress</b>         | Displays the status of the CIMC firmware download. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>slot</i>—Router slot number in which the E-Series Server is installed.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>show ucse slot imc files</b>                     | Displays the CIMC installable images that are available on the local file system. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>slot</i>—Router slot number in which the E-Series Server is installed.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |

## Password Reset Command

## Session Command

## IP Address Configuration Commands

## CIMC Access Commands

## VLAN Command

| Commands                                 | Description                                            |
|------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>imc vlan <i>vlan_number</i></code> | Enters VLAN configuration mode for the specified VLAN. |
| <code>no imc vlan</code>                 | The <code>no</code> command removes the configuration. |

# Reload, Reset, Start, Stop, Shutdown Commands

## RAID Commands

| Commands                                                                             | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>ucse slot server raid level</b> {0   1   5   NONE} [ <b>use hard_drive_list</b> ] | <p>Configures the specified RAID level on the E-Series Server.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>slot</i>—Router slot number in which the E-Series Server is installed.</li> <li>• <b>0</b>—Data is stored evenly in stripe blocks across two or more disks without redundancy (mirroring).</li> <li>• <b>1</b>—Data is stored in mirrored set of disk drives with an optional hot spare disk drive.</li> <li>• <b>5</b>—Data is stored in stripe blocks with parity data staggered across all disk drives.</li> <li>• <b>NONE</b>—Disk drives of a computer are not configured as RAID and are put in a JBOD configuration.</li> <li>• <b>use hard_drive_list</b>— Allows you to specify the hard disk drives (HDD) on which you want to configure RAID. Enter the list of HDDs in a comma-separated list, such as HDD1, HDD2, HDD3. This command only applies to the internal hard drives, which are named according to their physical location.</li> </ul> <p>If you do not use the <b>use hard_drive_list</b> command, the system combines all of the drives into a RAID array.</p> <p><b>Note</b> The names of the hard drives must exactly match the names displayed by the output of the <b>show ucse slot server boot devices</b> command.</p> |
| <b>show ucse slot server raid level</b>                                              | Displays the current RAID configuration.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |

# Statistics and Status Commands

## Boot Commands

### Erase Hard Drive Commands

| Commands                                                                   | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>ucse slot server erase device hdd {ALL   use hard_drive_list}</code> | <p>Erases all existing data from the E-Series Server's hard disk drives.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>slot</i>—Router slot number in which the E-Series Server is installed.</li> <li>• <i>hard_drive_list</i>—Erases the data from the specified hard disk drives.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> The names of the hard disk drives must exactly match the names displayed by the output of the <code>show ucse slot server boot devices</code> command.</p> |
| <code>show ucse slot server erase device status</code>                     | <p>Displays the status of devices that are erased.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |





## APPENDIX **C**

# Cisco IOS Software Command Reference—Cisco ISR 4000 Series

This chapter provides the new Cisco IOS commands that were introduced for the E-Series Servers installed in the Cisco ISR 4000 series.



**Note** The Cisco IOS commands are sometimes updated after original publication; therefore, for updated content, review the *Cisco IOS Interface and Hardware Component Command Reference* at <http://www.cisco.com/en/US/docs/ios-xml/ios/interface/command/ir-cr-book.html>.

This appendix includes the following sections:

- [debug platform software ucse](#), on page 179
- [hw-module subslot session](#), on page 180
- [imc ip dhcp](#), on page 181
- [platform switchport](#), on page 182
- [show interfaces ucse](#), on page 183
- [ucse subslot imc password-reset](#), on page 185
- [ucse subslot server](#), on page 186
- [ucse subslot server password-reset](#), on page 187
- [ucse subslot shutdown](#), on page 188
- [ucse subslot statistics](#), on page 189
- [ucse subslot status](#), on page 190
- [Commands Modified to Support Cisco ISR 4451-X](#), on page 192

## debug platform software ucse

To debug the Cisco UCS E-Series Server platform software and display debug messages, use the **debug platform software ucse** command in privileged EXEC mode. To disable debug, use the **no** form of this command.

```
debug platform software ucse {all | error | normal}
no debug platform software ucse {all | error | normal}
```

**Syntax Description**

|               |                                       |
|---------------|---------------------------------------|
| <b>all</b>    | Displays all platform debug messages. |
| <b>error</b>  | Displays error debug messages.        |
| <b>normal</b> | Displays normal debug messages.       |

**Command Modes**

Privileged EXEC (#)

**Command History**

| Release                   | Modification                                                                                                                       |
|---------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Cisco IOS XE Release 3.9S | This command was introduced on the Cisco UCS E-Series Servers installed in the Cisco 4400 Series Integrated Services Router (ISR). |

**Usage Guidelines**

After you use the **debug platform software ucse all** command, use the appropriate **ucse** command to display debug messages.

**Examples**

The following example shows how to display debug messages for the **ucse subslot imc password-reset** command:

```
Router# debug platform software ucse all
Router#
Router# ucse subslot 2/0 imc password-reset
ucse2/0/0
Password reset command sent.
Router#
IMC ACK: UCSE password reset successful for IMC
ACK received for UCSE: Password Reset Command
```

## hw-module subslot session

To start or close a Cisco Integrated Management Controller (CIMC) session or host server module session, use the **hw-module subslot session** command in privileged EXEC mode.

**hw-module subslot *slot/subslot* session {imc | server}**

**Syntax Description**

|                |                                                                                                                                                                |
|----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>slot/</i>   | Number of the router slot in which the server module is installed.<br><b>Note</b> For the NIM E-Series NCE, the slot number is 0.                              |
| <i>subslot</i> | Number of the subslot in which the server module is installed.<br><b>Note</b> For Cisco UCS E-Series Servers and the SM E-Series NCE, the subslot number is 0. |
| <b>imc</b>     | Starts a session with CIMC.                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>server</b>  | Starts a session with the host server module.                                                                                                                  |



**Command Modes**

Privileged EXEC (#)

**Command History**

| Release                    | Modification                                                                                                                                           |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Cisco IOS XE Release 3.9S  | This command was introduced on the Cisco UCS E-Series Servers installed in the Cisco 4400 Series Integrated Services Router (ISR).                     |
| Cisco IOS XE Release 3.15S | This command was supported on an additional platform: the NIM E-Series Network Compute Engine (NIM E-Series NCE) installed in a Cisco ISR 4000 series. |

**Usage Guidelines**

Only one active session is allowed on the CIMC or server module at any time.

**Examples**

The following example shows how to start a CIMC session in an E-Series Server installed in a Cisco ISR 4000 series:

```
Router# hardware-module subslot 1/0 session imc
```

The following example shows how to start a server module session in an E-Series Server installed in a Cisco ISR 4000 series:

```
Router# hardware-module subslot 1/0 session server
```

## imc ip dhcp

To configure a DHCP IP address for the Cisco Integrated Management Controller (CIMC), use the **imc ip dhcp** command in UCSE configuration mode. To remove the DHCP IP address, use the **no** form of this command.

```
imc ip dhcp
no imc ip dhcp
```

**Syntax Description**

|                                            |
|--------------------------------------------|
| This command has no arguments or keywords. |
|--------------------------------------------|

**Command Modes**

UCSE configuration (config-ucse)

**Command History**

| Release                   | Modification                                                                                                                       |
|---------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Cisco IOS XE Release 3.9S | This command was introduced on the Cisco UCS E-Series Servers installed in the Cisco 4400 Series Integrated Services Router (ISR). |

**Examples**

The following example shows how to configure a dynamic IP address for CIMC:

```
Router# configure terminal
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
Router(config)# ucse subslot 1/0
```

```
Router(config-ucse)# imc ip dhcp
Router(config-ucse)#
IMC ACK: DHCP enable received for IMC.

IMC ACK: UCSE setting DHCP enable for IMC successful.
```

## platform switchport

To enable the Switch Virtual Interface (SVI) configuration on a UCS E series server, use the **platform switchport svi** command in privileged EXEC mode. To disable the configuration, use the **no** form of this command.

**platform switchport** *ucse interface* **svi**

### Syntax Description

|                       |                                                                                                        |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>ucse interface</i> | Number of the UCSE interface. For Cisco UCS E-Series Servers, the UCSE interface number can be 0 or 1. |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

### Command Modes

UCSE Config Mode (config-ucse)#

### Command History

| Release                    | Modification                                                 |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| Cisco IOS XE Release 3.15S | This command was introduced on Cisco ISR4000 Series Routers. |

### Usage Guidelines

Enabling or disabling the SVI configuration on a UCS-E subslot interface requires a module OIR or router reload after you save the configuration.

### Examples

Before you use this command, you have to set the spanning tree mode. The following example shows how to set the spanning tree mode:

```
spanning-tree vlan 1-4094 priority 24576
```

The following example shows how to enable Switch Virtual Interface (SVI) configuration on a UCS E series server:

```
ISR4k(config-ucse)#platform switchport 1 svi
Ena/Dis SVI on UCSE needs a OIR or Router reload
```

### Examples

After you use this command, the UCS-E interface shows up in the show spanning-tree command output:

```
SR4451-1#show spanning-tree

G0:VLAN0001
Spanning tree enabled protocol rstp
Root ID Priority 24577
Address f07f.06bc.c0b1
This bridge is the root
Hello Time 2 sec Max Age 20 sec Forward Delay 15 sec
```

```

Bridge ID Priority 24577 (priority 24576 sys-id-ext 1)
Address f07f.06bc.c0b1
Hello Time 2 sec Max Age 20 sec Forward Delay 15 sec
Aging Time 300

Interface Role Sts Cost Prio.Nbr Type

uc1/0/0 Desg FWD 4 128.257 P2p
uc1/0/1 Desg FWD 4 128.258 P2p

G0:VLAN0003
Spanning tree enabled protocol rstp
Root ID Priority 24579
Address f07f.06bc.c0b1
This bridge is the root
Hello Time 2 sec Max Age 20 sec Forward Delay 15 sec

Bridge ID Priority 24579 (priority 24576 sys-id-ext 3)
Address f07f.06bc.c0b1
Hello Time 2 sec Max Age 20 sec Forward Delay 15 sec
Aging Time 300

Interface Role Sts Cost Prio.Nbr Type

uc1/0/0 Desg FWD 4 128.257 P2p
uc1/0/1 Desg FWD 4 128.258 P2p

ISR4451-1#

```

## show interfaces ucse

To display Cisco UCS E-Series Server interface statistics, use the **show interfaces ucse** command in privileged EXEC mode.

**show interfaces ucse** *slot/subslot/ucse-interface* [**{**accounting | controller | counters | crb | dampening | description | etherchannel | history | irb | mac-accounting | monitor | mpls-exp | precedence | stats | summary | switchport**}**]

### Syntax Description

|                       |                                                                                                                                                                |
|-----------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>slot</i>           | Number of the router slot in which the server module is installed.<br><b>Note</b> For the NIM E-Series NCE, the slot number is 0.                              |
| <i>subslot</i>        | Number of the subslot in which the server module is installed.<br><b>Note</b> For Cisco UCS E-Series Servers and the SM E-Series NCE, the subslot number is 0. |
| <i>ucse-interface</i> | Number of the UCSE interface.<br><b>Note</b> For Cisco UCS E-Series Servers, the UCSE interface number can be 0 or 1.                                          |

|                       |                                                                                                                   |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>accounting</b>     | (Optional) Displays the number of packets of each protocol type that have been sent through the interface.        |
| <b>controller</b>     | (Optional) Displays the interface, configuration, and controller status.                                          |
| <b>counters</b>       | (Optional) Displays the interface counters.                                                                       |
| <b>crb</b>            | (Optional) Displays interface routing or bridging information.                                                    |
| <b>dampening</b>      | (Optional) Displays interface dampening information.                                                              |
| <b>description</b>    | (Optional) Displays the interface description.                                                                    |
| <b>etherchannel</b>   | (Optional) Displays interface Ether Channel information.                                                          |
| <b>history</b>        | (Optional) Displays interface history.                                                                            |
| <b>irb</b>            | (Optional) Displays interface routing or bridging information.                                                    |
| <b>mac-accounting</b> | (Optional) Displays interface MAC accounting information.                                                         |
| <b>monitor</b>        | (Optional) Displays interface continuously.                                                                       |
| <b>mpls-exp</b>       | (Optional) Displays interface Multiprotocol Label Switching (MPLS) experimental accounting information.           |
| <b>precedence</b>     | (Optional) Displays interface precedence accounting information.                                                  |
| <b>stats</b>          | (Optional) Displays the switching path, the packets in and packets out, and the characters in and characters out. |
| <b>summary</b>        | (Optional) Displays the interface summary.                                                                        |
| <b>switchport</b>     | (Optional) Displays the switch port interface information.                                                        |

### Command Modes

Privileged EXEC (#)

### Command History

| Release                    | Modification                                                                                                                                           |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Cisco IOS XE Release 3.9S  | This command was introduced on the Cisco UCS E-Series Servers installed in the Cisco 4400 Series Integrated Services Router (ISR).                     |
| Cisco IOS XE Release 3.15S | This command was supported on an additional platform: the NIM E-Series Network Compute Engine (NIM E-Series NCE) installed in a Cisco ISR 4000 Series. |

### Examples

The following example provides sample output from the **show interfaces ucse slot/0/0 switchport** command in an E-Series Server installed in a Cisco ISR 4000 series:

```
Router# show interfaces ucse 1/0/0 switchport
Name: ucse 1/0/0
```

```

Switchport: Enabled
Administrative mode: trunk
Operational Mode: trunk
Administrative Trunking Encapsulation: dot1q
Operational Trunking Encapsulation: native
Negotiation of Trunking: Disabled
Trunking Native Mode VLAN: 2352
Trunking VLANs Enabled: 1-2349,2450-4094
Voice VLAN: none

```

## ucse subslot imc password-reset

To reset the Cisco Integrated Management Controller (CIMC) password, use the **ucse subslot imc password-reset** command in privileged EXEC mode.

**ucse subslot *slot/subslot* imc password-reset**

### Syntax Description

|                |                                                                                                                                                                |
|----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>slot</i>    | Number of the router slot in which the server module is installed.<br><b>Note</b> For the NIM E-Series NCE, the slot number is 0.                              |
| <i>subslot</i> | Number of the subslot in which the server module is installed.<br><b>Note</b> For Cisco UCS E-Series Servers and the SM E-Series NCE, the subslot number is 0. |

### Command Modes

Privileged EXEC (#)

### Command History

| Release                    | Modification                                                                                                                                           |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Cisco IOS XE Release 3.9S  | This command was introduced on the Cisco UCS E-Series Servers installed in the Cisco 4400 Series Integrated Services Router (ISR).                     |
| Cisco IOS XE Release 3.15S | This command was supported on an additional platform: the NIM E-Series Network Compute Engine (NIM E-Series NCE) installed in a Cisco ISR 4000 Series. |

### Usage Guidelines

After you enter this command, at the next login, the system requests that you set a new password to access CIMC.

### Examples

The following example shows how to reset the CIMC password in an E-Series Server installed in a Cisco ISR 4000 series:

```

Router# ucse subslot 1/0 imc password-reset
Router#
IMC ACK: UCSE password reset successful for IMC

```

## ucse subslot server

To reload, reset, start, or stop the hardware on the server module, use the **ucse subslot server** command in privileged EXEC mode.

**ucse subslot slot/subslot server {reload | reset | start | stop}**

### Syntax Description

|                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|----------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>slot/</i>   | Number of the router slot in which the server module is installed.<br><b>Note</b> For the NIM E-Series NCE, the slot number is 0.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <i>subslot</i> | Number of the subslot in which the server module is installed.<br><b>Note</b> For Cisco UCS E-Series Servers and the SM E-Series NCE, the subslot number is 0.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>reload</b>  | Powers down the server module and then powers it on.<br><b>Note</b> The <b>reload</b> keyword is not supported on the NIM E-Series-NCE. Instead, we recommend that you use the following commands from the router:<br><br><ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Router # <b>ucse subslot slot/subslot shutdown</b></li> <li>2. Router # <b>ucse subslot slot/subslot start</b></li> </ol> If a reload is necessary, use the following command:<br>Router # <b>hw-module subslot 0/NIM-slot-number reload</b><br><b>Note</b> This command power-cycles the module. The CIMC and server reboot. |
| <b>reset</b>   | Resets the hardware on the server module.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <b>start</b>   | Powers on the server module.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <b>stop</b>    | Immediately powers down the server module.<br><b>Note</b> The <b>stop</b> keyword is not supported on the NIM E-Series-NCE. Instead, we recommend that you use the following command from the router:<br><br>Router # <b>ucse subslot slot/subslot shutdown</b><br>If it is necessary to do an immediate power down of the server, use the following command:<br>Router # <b>hw-module subslot 0/NIM-slot-number stop</b><br><b>Note</b> This command powers down the module. The CIMC and server power off.                                                                                      |

### Command Modes

Privileged EXEC (#)

| Command History | Release                    | Modification                                                                                                                                           |
|-----------------|----------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                 | Cisco IOS XE Release 3.9S  | This command was introduced on the Cisco UCS E-Series Servers installed in the Cisco 4400 Series Integrated Services Router (ISR).                     |
|                 | Cisco IOS XE Release 3.15S | This command was supported on an additional platform: the NIM E-Series Network Compute Engine (NIM E-Series NCE) installed in a Cisco ISR 4000 Series. |

**Usage Guidelines** Use the **reset** keyword only to recover from a shutdown or failed state.



**Caution** Using the **reset** keyword does *not* provide an orderly software shutdown and may impact file operations that are in progress.

### Examples

The following example shows how to reload the E-Series Server installed in a Cisco ISR 4000 series:

```
Router# ucse subslot 1/0 server reload
Router#
IMC ACK: UCSE Server reload successful.
```

The following example shows how to reset the E-Series Server installed in a Cisco ISR 4000 series:

```
Router# ucse subslot 1/0 server reset
Router#
IMC ACK: UCSE Server reset successful.
```

The following example shows how to start the E-Series Server installed in a Cisco ISR 4000 series:

```
Router# ucse subslot 1/0 server start
Router#
IMC ACK: UCSE Server start successful.
```

The following example shows how to stop the E-Series Server installed in a Cisco ISR 4000 series:

```
Router# ucse subslot 1/0 server stop
Router#
IMC ACK: UCSE Server stop successful.
```

## ucse subslot server password-reset

To reset the BIOS or RAID password, use the **ucse subslot server password-reset** command in privileged EXEC mode.

```
ucse subslot slot/subslot server password-reset {BIOS | RAID}
```

**Syntax Description**

|                |                                                                                                                                                                |
|----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>slot/</i>   | Number of the router slot in which the server module is installed.<br><b>Note</b> For the NIM E-Series NCE, the slot number is 0.                              |
| <i>subslot</i> | Number of the subslot in which the server module is installed.<br><b>Note</b> For Cisco UCS E-Series Servers and the SM E-Series NCE, the subslot number is 0. |
| <b>BIOS</b>    | Resets the BIOS password.                                                                                                                                      |
| <b>RAID</b>    | Resets the RAID password.<br><b>Note</b> RAID is not supported on the NIM E-Series NCE.                                                                        |

**Command Modes**

Privileged EXEC (#)

**Command History**

| Release                    | Modification                                                                                                                                           |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Cisco IOS XE Release 3.9S  | This command was introduced on the Cisco UCS E-Series Servers installed in the Cisco 4400 Series Integrated Services Router (ISR).                     |
| Cisco IOS XE Release 3.15S | This command was supported on an additional platform: the NIM E-Series Network Compute Engine (NIM E-Series NCE) installed in a Cisco ISR 4000 Series. |

**Usage Guidelines**

After you enter this command, at the next login, the system requests that you set a new password to access BIOS or configure RAID.

**Examples**

The following example shows how to reset the BIOS password in an E-Series Server installed in a Cisco ISR 4000 series:

```
Router# ucse subslot 1/0 server password-reset BIOS
Router#
IMC ACK: UCSE password reset successful for BIOS
```

The following example shows how to reset the RAID password in an E-Series Server installed in a Cisco ISR 4000 series:

```
Router# ucse subslot 1/0 server password-reset RAID
Router#
IMC ACK: UCSE password reset successful for RAID
```

## ucse subslot shutdown

To gracefully shut down the server module, use the **ucse subslot shutdown** command in privileged EXEC mode.



**ucse subslot slot/subslot shutdown**

|                           |                |                                                                                                                                                                |
|---------------------------|----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Syntax Description</b> | <i>slot</i>    | Number of the router slot in which the server module is installed.<br><b>Note</b> For the NIM E-Series NCE, the slot number is 0.                              |
|                           | <i>subslot</i> | Number of the subslot in which the server module is installed.<br><b>Note</b> For Cisco UCS E-Series Servers and the SM E-Series NCE, the subslot number is 0. |

**Command Modes**

Privileged EXEC (#)

**Command History**

| Release                    | Modification                                                                                                                                           |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Cisco IOS XE Release 3.9S  | This command was introduced on the Cisco UCS E-Series Servers installed in the Cisco 4400 Series Integrated Services Router (ISR).                     |
| Cisco IOS XE Release 3.15S | This command was supported on an additional platform: the NIM E-Series Network Compute Engine (NIM E-Series NCE) installed in a Cisco ISR 4000 Series. |

**Usage Guidelines**

The NIM E-Series NCE might take up to 60 seconds to shut down. After two or three shut down attempts, if the NIM E-Series NCE does not shut down, enter the following commands from the router:

1. Router # **hw-module subslot 0/NIM-slot-number stop**
2. Router # **hw-module subslot 0/NIM-slot-number start**

**Examples**

The following example shows how to shut down an E-Series Server installed in a Cisco ISR 4000 series:

```
Router# ucse subslot 1/0 shutdown
Router#
IMC ACK: UCSE Server shutdown successful.
```

## ucse subslot statistics

To display or clear server module statistics, use the **ucse subslot statistics** command in privileged EXEC mode.

**ucse subslot slot/subslot statistics [clear]**

|                           |             |                                                                                                                                   |
|---------------------------|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Syntax Description</b> | <i>slot</i> | Number of the router slot in which the server module is installed.<br><b>Note</b> For the NIM E-Series NCE, the slot number is 0. |
|---------------------------|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

|                |                                                                                                                                                                    |
|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>subslot</i> | Number of the subslot in which the server module is installed.<br><br><b>Note</b> For Cisco UCS E-Series Servers and the SM E-Series NCE, the subslot number is 0. |
| <b>clear</b>   | (Optional) Clears the server module statistics.                                                                                                                    |

**Command Modes**

Privileged EXEC (#)

**Command History**

| Release                    | Modification                                                                                                                                           |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Cisco IOS XE Release 3.9S  | This command was introduced on the Cisco UCS E-Series Servers installed in the Cisco 4400 Series Integrated Services Router (ISR).                     |
| Cisco IOS XE Release 3.15S | This command was supported on an additional platform: the NIM E-Series Network Compute Engine (NIM E-Series NCE) installed in a Cisco ISR 4000 Series. |

**Examples**

The following example shows how to display the statistics of an E-Series Server:

```
Router# ucse subslot 1/0 statistics
Count of number of shutdowns command : 1
Count of number of status commands : 0
Count of number of server raid password : 1
Count of number of imc password-reset : 2
Count of number of server bios password reset : 1
Count of number of server reload : 1
Count of number of server reset : 1
Count of number of server start : 1
Count of number of server stop : 1
Count of number of vlan commands : 0
Count of number of access-port commands : 1
Count of number of IMC configured IP or DHCP commands: 1
```

## ucse subslot status

To display configuration information related to the hardware and software on the server module, use the **ucse subslot status** command in privileged EXEC mode.

**ucse subslot *slot/subslot* status [detailed]**

**Syntax Description**

|                |                                                                                                                                                                    |
|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>slot/</i>   | Number of the router slot in which the server module is installed.<br><br><b>Note</b> For the NIM E-Series NCE, the slot number is 0.                              |
| <i>subslot</i> | Number of the subslot in which the server module is installed.<br><br><b>Note</b> For Cisco UCS E-Series Servers and the SM E-Series NCE, the subslot number is 0. |

|                 |                                                                                                                                           |
|-----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>detailed</b> | (Optional) Displays detailed information about the server module, such as its status and settings of the reset and heartbeat-reset flags. |
|-----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

**Command Modes**

Privileged EXEC (#)

**Command History**

| Release                    | Modification                                                                                                                                           |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Cisco IOS XE Release 3.9S  | This command was introduced on the Cisco UCS E-Series Servers installed in the Cisco 4400 Series Integrated Services Router (ISR).                     |
| Cisco IOS XE Release 3.15S | This command was supported on an additional platform: the NIM E-Series Network Compute Engine (NIM E-Series NCE) installed in a Cisco ISR 4000 Series. |

**Examples**

The following example shows how to display the status of an E-Series Server:

```

Router# ucse subslot 1/0 status
CPU info
 Name Cores Version

 CPU1 4 Intel(R) Xeon(R) CPU E5-2418L 0 @ 2.00GHz

Memory info
 Name Capacity Channel Speed (MHz) Channel Type

 Node0_Dimm0 Not Installed Unknown Unknown
 Node0_Dimm1 16384 MB 1333 DDR3
 Node0_Dimm2 8192 MB 1333 DDR3

Hard drive info
 Slot Number Controller Status Manufacturer Model Drive
 Firmware Coerced Size Type SED

 1 SLOT-5 online ATA ST91000640NS CC02
 952720 MB HDD false
 2 SLOT-5 online ATA ST91000640NS CC02
 952720 MB HDD false
 3 SLOT-5 online ATA ST91000640NS CC02
 952720 MB HDD false

Virtual drive info
 Virtual Drive Status Name Size RAID Level

 0 Optimal 1905440 MB RAID 5

PCI card info
 Name Name Slot Vendor ID Device ID Product

 PCIe Adapter1 0 0xe414 0x5716 Broadcom
 5719 1 Gbps 4...

```

```

PCIe Adapter2 2 0x0010 0x7300 LSI 9240-8i
MegaRAID S...

Network Setting
 IPv4 Address: 10.1.1.2
 IPv4 Netmask: 255.255.255.0
 IPv4 Gateway: 10.1.1.1

 NIC Mode: shared_lom
 NIC Redundancy: none
 NIC Interface: ge1

```

## Commands Modified to Support Cisco ISR 4451-X

### imc access-port

To configure Cisco Integrated Management Controller (CIMC) access through the server module's dedicated, management, or host ports, use the **imc access-port** command in interface configuration mode or UCSE configuration mode.

**Cisco UCS E-Series Server Installed in Cisco 2900 and 3900 ISR G2 and the Cisco ISR 4451-X**

```

imc access-port {dedicated | shared-lom [{GE1 | GE2 | GE3 | console | failover [option]}]}
no imc access-port {dedicated | shared-lom [{GE1 | GE2 | GE3 | console | failover [option]}]}

```

**Cisco UCS E-Series Server Installed in the Cisco ISR 4451-X—Applicable Only with Cisco IOS XE Release 3.9S**

```

imc access-port {MGMT | [{GE0 | GE1 | GE2 | GE3[failover-option]}]}
no imc access-port {MGMT | [{GE0 | GE1 | GE2 | GE3[failover-option]}]}

```

#### Syntax Description

Table 12: Cisco UCS E-Series Server Installed in Cisco 2900 and 3900 ISR G2 and the Cisco ISR 4451-X

|                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|-------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>dedicated</b>  | Configures CIMC access using the IMC dedicated port.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>shared-lom</b> | Configures CIMC access using one of the following host ports: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>GE1</b></li> <li>• <b>GE2</b></li> <li>• <b>GE3</b></li> <li>• <b>console</b></li> <li>• <b>failover</b></li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> If you enter <b>failover</b>, you must also enter one additional parameter:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>GE1 GE1 [GE2]   [GE3] [GE2 GE3]</b></li> <li>• <b>GE2 GE2 GE3</b></li> </ul> |

Table 13: Cisco UCS E-Series Server Installed in the Cisco ISR 4451-X—Applicable Only with Cisco IOS XE Release 3.9S

|                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|---------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>MGMT</b>               | Configures CIMC access using the Cisco UCS E-Series Server's management port.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>GE0, GE1, GE2, GE3</b> | <p>(Optional) Configures CIMC access using one of the following NIC interfaces:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>GE0</b>—Cisco UCS E-Series Server's internal NIC interface connecting to the router's UCSE <i>slot/0/0</i> interface.</li> <li>• <b>GE1</b>—Cisco UCS E-Series Server's internal NIC interface connecting to the router's UCSE <i>slot/0/1</i> interface.</li> <li>• <b>GE2</b>—Cisco UCS E-Series Server's external NIC interface.</li> <li>• <b>GE3</b>—Cisco UCS E-Series Server's external NIC interface. Applicable to double-wide Cisco UCS E-Series Servers.</li> <li>• <i>failover-option</i>—To configure failover, enter one additional parameter: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>GE2 backplane</b>—Applicable to single-wide and double-wide Cisco UCS E-Series Servers.</li> <li>• <b>GE3 backplane</b>—Applicable to double-wide Cisco UCS E-Series Servers.</li> <li>• <b>GE2 GE3</b>—Applicable to double-wide Cisco UCS E-Series Servers.</li> <li>• <b>GE3 GE2</b>—Applicable to double-wide Cisco UCS E-Series Servers.</li> <li>• <b>GE2 GE3 backplane</b>—Applicable to double-wide Cisco UCS E-Series Servers.</li> <li>• <b>GE3 GE2 backplane</b>—Applicable to double-wide Cisco UCS E-Series Servers.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> |

### Command Modes

Interface configuration (config-if) for a Cisco UCS E-Series Server installed in Cisco 2900 and 3900 ISR G2.

UCSE configuration (config-ucse) for a Cisco UCS E-Series Server installed in the Cisco ISR 4451-X.

### Command History

| Release                    | Modification                                                                                                                                |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Cisco IOS Release 15.2(4)M | This command was introduced on the Cisco UCS E-Series Servers installed in Cisco 2900 and 3900 Series Integrated Services Routers (ISR G2). |
| Cisco IOS XE Release 3.9S  | This command was implemented on Cisco UCS E-Series Servers installed in the Cisco 4451-X Integrated Services Router (Cisco ISR 4451-X).     |
| Cisco IOS XE Release 3.10S | This command was modified so that all platforms—Cisco 2900 and 3900 ISR G2 and the Cisco ISR 4451-X—use the same command.                   |

### Usage Guidelines

If the Cisco UCS E-Series Server is installed in Cisco 2900 and 3900 ISR G2, use the **imc access-port** command in interface configuration mode:

```
Router(config)# interface ucse 2/0
Router(config-if)#
```

If the Cisco UCS E-Series Server is installed in Cisco ISR 4451-X, use the **imc access port** command in UCSE configuration mode:

```
Router(config)# ucse subslot 1/0
Router(config-ucse)#
```

## Examples

The following example shows how to configure CIMC access using the dedicated port:

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# interface ucse 2/0
Router(config-if)# imc ip address 10.0.0.2 255.0.0.0 default-gateway 10.0.0.1
Router(config-if)# imc access-port dedicated
Router(config-if)# no shut
Router(config-if)# end
```

### Cisco UCS E-Series Server Installed in the Cisco ISR 4451-X—Applicable Only with Cisco IOS XE Release 3.9S

The following example shows how to configure CIMC access using the MGMT port:

```
Router# configure terminal
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
Router(config)# ucse subslot 1/0
Router(config-ucse)# imc access-port mgmt
Router(config-ucse)#
IMC ACK: Access ports received: MGMT

IMC ACK: UCSE access port operation successful.
```

## switchport

### Cisco 3550, 4000, and 4500 Series Switches

To put an interface that is in Layer 3 mode into Layer 2 mode for Layer 2 configuration, use the **switchport** command in interface configuration mode. To put an interface into Layer 3 mode, use the **no** form of this command.

```
switchport
no switchport
```

### Cisco Catalyst 6500 and 6000 Series Switches and Cisco 7600 Series Routers

To modify the switching characteristics of the Layer 2-switched interface, use the **switchport** command (without keywords). Use the **no** form of this command (without keywords) to return the interface to the routed-interface status and cause all further Layer 2 configuration to be erased. Use the **switchport** commands (with keywords) to configure the switching characteristics.

```
switchport
switchport {host | nonegotiate}
```

**no switchport**  
**no switchport nonegotiate**

#### Cisco UCS E-Series Server Installed in Cisco 4400 Integrated Services Routers

To configure the server module to communicate with the router over a high-speed Multi Gigabit Fabric (MGF) backplane switch port, use the **switchport** command (with keywords) in interface configuration mode.

**switchport** {**access** | **mode** | **trunk**}

#### Cisco 1000 Series Integrated Services Routers with 4 or 8 Front-Panel Switch Ports

To configure the flex Layer 2 and Layer 3 ports to Layer 2 interface, use the **switchport** command (without keywords). To configure to Layer 3 interface, use the **no switchport** command (without keywords).

**switchport**  
**no switchport**

#### Syntax Description

##### Cisco 3550, 4000, and 4500 Series Switches

This command has no arguments or keywords.

##### Cisco Catalyst 6500 and 6000 Series Switches and Cisco 7600 Series Routers

*Table 14: Syntax Description for Cisco Catalyst 6500 and 6000 Series Switches and Cisco 7600 Series Routers*

|                    |                                                                                      |
|--------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>host</b>        | Optimizes the port configuration for a host connection.                              |
| <b>nonegotiate</b> | Specifies that the device will not engage in negotiation protocol on this interface. |

#### Cisco UCS E-Series Server Installed in Cisco 4400 Integrated Services Routers

*Table 15: Syntax Description for Cisco UCS E-Series Server Installed in Cisco 4400 Integrated Services Routers*

|               |                                                                                           |
|---------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>access</b> | Sets the access mode characteristics of the interface.                                    |
| <b>mode</b>   | Sets the interface type: Access or Trunk.                                                 |
| <b>trunk</b>  | Sets trunk characteristics when the interface is in Trunk mode. This is the default mode. |

#### Cisco 1000 Series Integrated Services Routers with 4 or 8 Front-Panel Switch Ports

This command has no arguments or keywords.

#### Command Default

##### Cisco 3550, 4000, and 4500 Series Switches

All interfaces are in Layer 2 mode.

##### Catalyst 6500/6000 Series Switches and 7600 Series Routers

The default access VLAN and trunk-interface native VLAN are default VLANs that correspond to the platform or interface hardware.

##### Cisco 1000 Series Integrated Services Routers with 4 or 8 Front-Panel Switch Ports

The last two ports of the front-panel switch ports (flex ports) are set to Layer 2 interface by default.

**Command Modes** Interface configuration (config-if)**Command History**

| Release                       | Modification                                                                                                                                                  |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 12.1(4)EA1                    | This command was introduced.                                                                                                                                  |
| 12.2(14)SX                    | Support for this command was introduced on the Supervisor Engine 720.                                                                                         |
| 12.2(15)ZJ                    | This command was implemented on Cisco 2600 series, Cisco 3600 series, and Cisco 3700 series routers.                                                          |
| 12.2(17d)SXB                  | Support for this command on the Supervisor Engine 2 was extended to Cisco IOS Release 12.2(17d)SXB.                                                           |
| 12.3(4)T                      | This command was integrated into Cisco IOS Release 12.3(4)T on the following platforms: Cisco 2600 series, Cisco 3600 series, and Cisco 3700 series routers.  |
| 15.1(2)T                      | Support for IPv6 was added.                                                                                                                                   |
| Cisco IOS XE Release 3.9S     | This command was implemented on Cisco UCS E-Series Servers installed in the Cisco 4400 Series Integrated Services Routers (ISR).                              |
| Cisco IOS XE Release 17.11.1a | This command was implemented to provide flex support on the last two Layer 2 switch ports of the Cisco 1000 Series ISRs with 4 or 8 Front-Panel Switch Ports. |

**Usage Guidelines****Cisco 3550, 4000, and 4500 Series Switches**

Use the **no switchport** command to put the interface into the routed-interface status and to erase all Layer 2 configurations. You must use this command before assigning an IP address to a routed port. Entering the **no switchport** command shuts down the port and then reenables it, which might generate messages on the device to which the port is connected.

You can verify the switchport status of an interface by entering the **show running-config** privileged EXEC command.

**Cisco Catalyst 6500 and 6000 Series Switches and Cisco 7600 Series Routers**

You must enter the **switchport** command without any keywords to configure the LAN interface as a Layer 2 interface before you can enter additional **switchport** commands with keywords. This action is required only if you have not entered the **switchport** command for the interface.

Entering the **no switchport** command shuts down the port and then reenables it. This action may generate messages on the device to which the port is connected.

To optimize the port configuration, entering the **switchport host** command sets the switch port mode to access, enables spanning tree PortFast, and disables channel grouping. Only an end station can accept this configuration.



Because spanning-tree PortFast is enabled, you should enter the **switchport host** command only on ports that are connected to a single host. Connecting other Cisco 7600 series routers, hubs, concentrators, switches, and bridges to a fast-start port can cause temporary spanning-tree loops.

Enable the **switchport host** command to decrease the time that it takes to start up packet forwarding.

The no form of the **switchport nonegotiate** command removes nonegotiate status.

When using the **nonegotiate** keyword, Dynamic Inter-Switch Link Protocol and Dynamic Trunking Protocol (DISL/DTP)-negotiation packets are not sent on the interface. The device trunks or does not trunk according to the mode parameter given: access or trunk. This command returns an error if you attempt to execute it in dynamic (auto or desirable) mode.

You must force a port to trunk before you can configure it as a SPAN-destination port. Use the **switchport nonegotiate** command to force the port to trunk.

## Examples

### Cisco 3550, 4000, and 4500 Series Switches

The following example shows how to cause an interface to cease operating as a Layer 2 port and become a Cisco-routed (Layer 3) port:

```
Router(config-if) #no switchport
```

### Cisco Catalyst 6500 and 6000 Series Switches and Cisco 7600 Series Routers

The following example shows how to cause the port interface to stop operating as a Cisco-routed port and convert to a Layer 2-switched interface:

```
Router(config-if) #
switchport
Router(config-if) #
```



**Note** The **switchport** command is not used on platforms that do not support Cisco-routed ports. All physical ports on such platforms are assumed to be Layer 2-switched interfaces.

The following example shows how to optimize the port configuration for a host connection:

```
Router(config-if) # switchport host
switchport mode will be set to access
spanning-tree portfast will be enabled
channel group will be disabled
Router(config-if) #
```

This example shows how to cause a port interface that has already been configured as a switched interface to refrain from negotiating trunking mode and act as a trunk or access port (depending on the mode set):

```
Router(config-if) #
switchport nonegotiate
Router(config-if) #
```

The following example shows how to cause an interface to cease operating as a Cisco-routed port and to convert it into a Layer 2 switched interface:

```
Router(config-if)#
switchport
```



**Note** The **switchport** command is not used on platforms that do not support Cisco-routed (Layer 3) ports. All physical ports on such platforms are assumed to be Layer 2 switched interfaces.

### Cisco UCS E-Series Server Installed in Cisco 4400 Integrated Services Routers

The following example shows how to set the interface to **access** mode:

```
Router#configure terminal
Router(config)# interface ucse 1/0/0
Router(config-if)# switchport mode access
```

The following example shows how to set the interface to **trunk** mode:

```
Router#configure terminal
Router(config)# interface ucse 1/0/0
Router(config-if)# switchport mode trunk
```

### Cisco 1000 Series Integrated Services Routers with 4 or 8 Front-Panel Switch Ports

The following example shows how to convert a flex port to a Layer 3 port:

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# interface GigabitEthernet 0/1/6
Device(config-if)# no switchport
Device(config-if)# ip address 10.10.0.1 255.255.255.0
Device(config-if)# exit
```

The following example shows how to convert a flex port to a Layer 2 port:

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# interface GigabitEthernet 0/1/6
Device(config-if)# switchport
Device(config-if)# switchport mode access
Device(config-if)# exit
```

#### Related Commands

| Command                           | Description                                                                                                                                |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>show interfaces switchport</b> | Displays the administrative and operational status of a switching (nonrouting) port, including port blocking and port protection settings. |
| <b>show running-config</b>        | Displays the current operating configuration.                                                                                              |
| <b>switchport access vlan</b>     | Sets the VLAN when the interface is in Access mode.                                                                                        |
| <b>switchport mode</b>            | Sets the interface type: Access or Trunk                                                                                                   |

| Command                 | Description                                                     |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>switchport trunk</b> | Sets trunk characteristics when the interface is in Trunk mode. |

## switchport access vlan

To set the VLAN when the interface is in access mode, use the **switchport access vlan** command in interface configuration or template configuration mode. To reset the access-mode VLAN to the appropriate default VLAN for the device, use the **no** form of this command.

**switchport access vlan** *vlan-id*  
**no switchport access vlan**

### Syntax Description

|                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>vlan-id</i> | VLAN to set when the interface is in access mode; valid values are from 1 to 4094.<br>Valid values for Cisco UCS E-Series Servers installed in Cisco 4400 Integrated Services Routers are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 1-2349—VLAN ID Range 1</li> <li>• 2450-4095—VLAN ID Range 2</li> </ul> |
|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

### Command Default

The defaults are as follows:

- Access VLAN and trunk-interface native VLAN are default VLANs that correspond to the platform or interface hardware.
- All VLAN lists include all VLANs.

### Command Modes

Interface configuration (config-if)  
Template configuration (config-template)

### Command History

| Release                   | Modification                                                                                                                     |
|---------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 12.2(14)SX                | Support for this command was introduced on the Supervisor Engine 720.                                                            |
| 12.2(17d)SXB              | Support for this command on the Supervisor Engine 2 was extended to Release 12.2(17d)SXB.                                        |
| 12.2(33)SRA               | This command was integrated into Cisco IOS Release 12.2(33)SRA.                                                                  |
| Cisco IOS XE Release 3.9S | This command was implemented on Cisco UCS E-Series Servers installed in the Cisco 4400 Series Integrated Services Routers (ISR). |
| Cisco IOS XE Release 3.6E | This command was integrated into Cisco IOS XE Release 3.6E. This command is supported in template configuration mode.            |

### Usage Guidelines

You must enter the **switchport** command without any keywords to configure the LAN interface as a Layer 2 interface before you can enter the **switchport access vlan** command. This action is required only if you have not entered the **switchport** command for the interface.

Entering the **no switchport** command shuts down the port and then reenables it. This action may generate messages on the device to which the port is connected.

The no form of the **switchport access vlan** command resets the access-mode VLAN to the appropriate default VLAN for the device.

## Examples

The following example shows how to stop the port interface from operating as a Cisco-routed port and convert to a Layer 2 switched interface:

```
Device(config-if)# switchport
```



**Note** The **switchport** command is not used on platforms that do not support Cisco-routed ports. All physical ports on such platforms are assumed to be Layer 2-switched interfaces.

The following example shows how to make a port interface that has already been configured as a switched interface to operate in VLAN 2 instead of the platform's default VLAN in interface configuration mode:

```
Device(config-if)# switchport access vlan 2
```

The following example shows how to make a port interface that has already been configured as a switched interface to operate in VLAN 2 instead of the platform's default VLAN, using an interface template in template configuration mode:

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# template user-templ1
Device(config-template)# switchport access vlan 2
Device(config-template)# end
```

## Related Commands

| Command                           | Description                                                                          |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>show interfaces switchport</b> | Displays the administrative and operational status of a switching (nonrouting) port. |
| <b>switchport</b>                 | Configures a LAN interface as a Layer 2 interface.                                   |

## switchport mode

To set the interface type, use the **switchport mode** command in interface configuration mode. Use the appropriate **no** form of this command to reset the mode to the appropriate default mode for the device.

### Cisco 2600 Series, Cisco 3600 Series, and Cisco 3700 Series Routers

```
switchport mode {access | trunk}
no switchport mode
```

### Cisco Catalyst 6500/6000 Series Switches

```
switchport mode {access | dot1q-tunnel | dynamic {auto | desirable} | trunk}
no switchport mode
```

**Cisco 7600 Series Routers**

```

switchport mode {access | dot1q-tunnel | dynamic {auto | desirable} | private-vlan | trunk}
no switchport mode
switchport mode private-vlan {host | promiscuous}
no switchport mode private-vlan

```

**Cisco UCS E-Series Server Installed in Cisco 4400 Integrated Services Routers**

```

switchport mode {access | trunk}
no switchport mode {access | trunk}

```

**Syntax Description**

|                                 |                                                                                                               |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>access</b>                   | Sets a nontrunking, nontagged single VLAN Layer 2 interface.                                                  |
| <b>trunk</b>                    | Specifies a trunking VLAN Layer 2 interface.                                                                  |
| <b>dot1q-tunnel</b>             | Sets the trunking mode to TUNNEL unconditionally.                                                             |
| <b>dynamic auto</b>             | Sets the interface to convert the link to a trunk link.                                                       |
| <b>dynamic desirable</b>        | Sets the interface to actively attempt to convert the link to a trunk link.                                   |
| <b>private vlan host</b>        | Specifies that the ports with a valid private VLAN (PVLAN) association become active host private VLAN ports. |
| <b>private vlan promiscuous</b> | Specifies that the ports with a valid PVLAN mapping become active promiscuous ports.                          |

*Table 16: Cisco UCS E-Series Server Installed in Cisco 4400 Integrated Services Routers*

|               |                                                              |
|---------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>access</b> | Sets a nontrunking, nontagged single VLAN Layer 2 interface. |
| <b>trunk</b>  | Specifies a trunking VLAN Layer 2 interface.                 |

**Command Default**

The default is **access** mode.

The default mode is dependent on the platform; it should be either **dynamic auto** for platforms that are intended as wiring closets or **dynamic desirable** for platforms that are intended as backbone switches. The default for PVLAN ports is that no mode is set.

The defaults are as follows:

- The mode is dependent on the platform; it should either be **dynamic auto** for platforms that are intended for wiring closets or **dynamic desirable** for platforms that are intended as backbone switches.
- No mode is set for PVLAN ports.

**Command Modes**

Interface configuration (config-if)

**Command History**

| <b>Release</b> | <b>Modification</b>                                                     |
|----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 12.0(7)XE      | This command was introduced on the Cisco Catalyst 6000 family switches. |
| 12.1(1)E       | This command was integrated on the Cisco Catalyst 6000 family switches. |

| Release                   | Modification                                                                                                                                                    |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 12.1(8a)EX                | The switchport mode <b>private-vlan</b> { <b>host</b>   <b>promiscuous</b> } syntax was added.                                                                  |
| 12.2(2)XT                 | Creation of switchports became available on Cisco 2600 series, Cisco 3600 series, and Cisco 3700 series routers.                                                |
| 12.2(8)T                  | This command was integrated into Cisco IOS Release 12.2(8)T for creation of switchports on Cisco 2600 series, Cisco 3600 series, and Cisco 3700 series routers. |
| 12.2(14)SX                | Support for this command was introduced on the Supervisor Engine 720.                                                                                           |
| 12.2(17d)SXB              | Support for this command on the Supervisor Engine 2 was extended to Cisco IOS Release 12.2(17d)SXB.                                                             |
| Cisco IOS XE Release 3.9S | This command was implemented on Cisco UCS E-Series Servers installed in the Cisco 4400 Series Integrated Services Routers (ISR).                                |

## Usage Guidelines

### Cisco 2600 Series, Cisco 3600 Series, and Cisco 3700 Series Routers

If you enter a forced mode, the interface does not negotiate the link to the neighboring interface. Ensure that the interface ends match.

The **no** form of the command is not supported on the Cisco 2600 series, Cisco 3600 series, and Cisco 3700 series routers.

### Cisco Catalyst 6500/6000 Switches and Cisco 7600 Series Routers

If you enter **access** mode, the interface goes into permanent nontrunking mode and negotiates to convert the link into a nontrunk link even if the neighboring interface does not agree to the change.

If you enter **trunk** mode, the interface goes into permanent trunking mode and negotiates to convert the link into a trunk link even if the neighboring interface does not agree to the change.

If you enter **dynamic auto** mode, the interface converts the link to a trunk link if the neighboring interface is set to **trunk** or **desirable** mode.

If you enter **dynamic desirable** mode, the interface becomes a trunk interface if the neighboring interface is set to **trunk**, **desirable**, or **auto** mode.

If you configure a port as a promiscuous or host-PVLAN port and one of the following applies, the port becomes inactive:

- The port does not have a valid PVLAN association or mapping configured.
- The port is a SPAN destination.

If you delete a private-port PVLAN association or mapping, or if you configure a private port as a SPAN destination, the deleted private-port PVLAN association or mapping or the private port that is configured as a SPAN destination becomes inactive.

If you enter **dot1q-tunnel** mode, PortFast Bridge Protocol Data Unit (BPDU) filtering is enabled and Cisco Discovery Protocol (CDP) is disabled on protocol-tunneled interfaces.

## Examples

### Cisco 2600 Series, Cisco 3600 Series, and Cisco 3700 Series Routers

The following example shows how to set the interface to **access** mode:

```
Router#configure terminal
Router(config)# interface fastethernet 4/1
Router(config-if)#switchport mode access
```

The following example shows how to set the interface to **trunk** mode:

```
Router#configure terminal
Router(config)# interface fastethernet 4/1
Router(config-if)#switchport mode trunk
```

### Cisco Catalyst 6500/6000 Switches and Cisco 7600 Series Routers

The following example shows how to set the interface to dynamic desirable mode:

```
Router#configure terminal
Router(config)# interface fastethernet 4/1
Router(config-if)# switchport mode dynamic desirable
```

The following example shows how to set a port to PVLAN-host mode:

```
Router#configure terminal
Router(config)# interface fastethernet 4/1
Router(config-if)# switchport mode private-vlan host
```

The following example shows how to set a port to PVLAN-promiscuous mode:

```
Router#configure terminal
Router(config)# interface fastethernet 4/1
Router(config-if)# switchport mode private-vlan promiscuous
```

### Integrated Series Routers Generation 2 (ISR G2) Platforms with EHWIC-4/8ESG

The following example shows how to configure tunneling on port 4/1 and verify the configuration:

```
Router#configure terminal
Router(config)# interface fastethernet 4/1
Router(config-if)# switchport mode dot1q-tunnel
Router(config-if)# end
```

### Cisco UCS E-Series Server Installed in Cisco 4400 Integrated Services Routers

The following example shows how to set the interface to **access** mode:

```
Router#configure terminal
Router(config)# interface ucse 1/0/0
Router(config-if)# switchport mode access
```

The following example shows how to set the interface to **trunk** mode:

```
Router#configure terminal
Router(config)# interface ucse 1/0/0
Router(config-if)# switchport mode trunk
```

## Related Commands

| Command                                         | Description                                                                      |
|-------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>show dot1q-tunnel</b>                        | Displays a list of 802.1Q tunnel-enabled ports.                                  |
| <b>show interfaces switchport</b>               | Displays administrative and operational status of a switching (nonrouting) port. |
| <b>show interfaces trunk</b>                    | Displays trunk information.                                                      |
| <b>switchport</b>                               | Modifies the switching characteristics of the Layer 2-switched interface.        |
| <b>switchport private vlan host association</b> | Defines a PVLAN association for an isolated or community port.                   |
| <b>switchport private vlan mapping</b>          | Defines the PVLAN mapping for a promiscuous port.                                |
| <b>switchport trunk</b>                         | Sets trunk characteristics when the interface is in trunking mode.               |

## switchport trunk

To set the trunk characteristics when the interface is in trunking mode, use the **switchport trunk** command in interface configuration mode. To reset all of the trunking characteristics back to the original defaults, use the **no** form of this command.

## Cisco 2600 Series, Cisco 3600 Series, and Cisco 3700 Series Routers

```
switchport trunk {encapsulation dot1q | native vlan | allowed vlan}
no switchport trunk {encapsulation dot1q | native vlan | allowed vlan}
```

## Cisco 7600 Series Routers and Catalyst 6500 Series Switches

```
{switchport trunk encapsulation {isl | dot1q [ethertype value]} | negotiate} | native vlan {tagvlan-id}
| allowed vlan vlan-list | pruning vlan vlan-list}
no switchport trunk {encapsulation {isl | dot1q [ethertype value]} | negotiate} | native vlan [tag]
| allowed vlan | pruning vlan}
```

## Cisco UCS E-Series Server Installed in Cisco 4400 Integrated Services Routers

```
switchport trunk {native vlan vlan-id | allowed vlan vlan-list}
no switchport trunk {native vlan vlan-id | allowed vlan vlan-list}
```

## Syntax Description

|                            |                                                                 |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>encapsulation isl</b>   | Sets the trunk encapsulation format to Inter-Switch Link (ISL). |
| <b>encapsulation dot1q</b> | Sets the trunk encapsulation format to 802.1Q.                  |
| <b>native vlan</b>         | Sets the native VLAN for the trunk in 802.1Q trunking mode.     |



|                                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>allowed vlan</b> <i>vlan list</i> | Sets the list of allowed VLANs that transmit traffic from this interface in tagged format when in trunking mode.                                                                                                    |
| <b>ethertype</b> <i>value</i>        | (Optional) Sets the EtherType value; valid values are from 0x0 to 0x5EF-0xFFFF.                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>encapsulation negotiate</b>       | Specifies that if the Dynamic Inter-Switch Link (DISL) protocol and Dynamic Trunking Protocol (DTP) negotiation do not resolve the encapsulation format, ISL is the selected format.                                |
| <b>native vlan tag</b>               | Enables the native VLAN tagging state on the interface.                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>native vlan</b> <i>vlan id</i>    | The particular native VLAN.                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <b>pruning vlan</b> <i>vlan list</i> | Sets the list of VLANs that are enabled for VLAN Trunking Protocol (VTP) pruning when the interface is in trunking mode. See the “Usage Guidelines” section for the <i>vlanlist</i> argument formatting guidelines. |

**Table 17: Cisco UCS E-Series Server Installed in Cisco 4400 Integrated Services Routers**

|                                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>native vlan</b> <i>vlan-id</i>    | The particular native VLAN. Valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 1-2349—VLAN ID Range 1</li> <li>• 2450-4095—VLAN ID Range 2</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>allowed vlan</b> <i>vlan-list</i> | Sets the list of allowed VLANs that transmit traffic from this interface in tagged format when in trunking mode. <p><b>Note</b> For <i>vlan-list</i> format, see <b>Cisco UCS E-Series Server Installed in Cisco 4400 Integrated Services Routers</b> section under <b>Usage Guidelines</b>.</p> |

### Command Default

- The default encapsulation type is dot1q.
- The default access VLAN and trunk interface native VLAN are default VLANs that correspond to the platform or interface hardware.
- The default for all VLAN lists is to include all VLANs.
- The encapsulation type is dependent on the platform or interface hardware.
- The access VLAN and trunk interface native VLAN are default VLANs that correspond to the platform or interface hardware.
- The default for all VLAN lists is to include all VLANs.
- **ethertype** *value* for 802.1Q encapsulation is 0x8100.

### Command Modes

Interface configuration (config-if)

### Command History

| Release   | Modification                                                      |
|-----------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 12.0(7)XE | This command was introduced on the Catalyst 6500 series switches. |

| Release                   | Modification                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 12.1(1)E                  | Switchport creation on Catalyst 6500 series switches was added.                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| 12.2(2)XT                 | This command was introduced to support switchport creation on Cisco 2600 series, Cisco 3600 series, and Cisco 3700 series routers.                                                                                                              |
| 12.2(8)T                  | This command was integrated into Cisco IOS Release 12.2(8)T to support switchport creation on Cisco 2600 series, Cisco 3600 series, and Cisco 3700 series routers.                                                                              |
| 12.2(14)SX                | This command was integrated into Cisco IOS Release 12.2(14)SX to support the Supervisor Engine 720 on the Cisco 7600 series routers and Catalyst 6500 series switches.                                                                          |
| 12.2(17a)SX               | This command was modified to include the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Restriction of ISL trunk-encapsulation.</li> <li>• Addition of the <b>dot1q</b> keyword and <b>ethertypevalue</b> keyword and argument.</li> </ul> |
| 12.2(17d)SXB              | Support for the Supervisor Engine 2 on the Cisco 7600 series routers and Catalyst 6500 series switches was added.                                                                                                                               |
| 12.2(18)SXD               | This command was modified to allow the <b>switchport trunk allowed vlan</b> command to be entered on interfaces where the span destination port is either a trunk or an access port.                                                            |
| 12.2(18)SXE               | This command added a restriction that Gigabit Ethernet (GE) Optimized Layer 2 WAN ports are not supported on the Supervisor Engine 720.                                                                                                         |
| 12.2(33)SRA               | This command was integrated into Cisco IOS Release 12.2(33)SRA.                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| 12.4(15)T                 | This command was modified to extend the range of valid VLAN IDs from 1 to 4094 for specified platforms.                                                                                                                                         |
| 12.2(33)SXH               | This command was changed as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Allowed the tagging of native VLAN traffic on a per-port basis.</li> <li>• Introduced on the Supervisor Engine 720-10GE.</li> </ul>                               |
| Cisco IOS XE Release 3.9S | This command was implemented on Cisco UCS E-Series Servers installed in the Cisco 4400 Series Integrated Services Routers (ISR).                                                                                                                |

## Usage Guidelines

### 802.1Q Trunks

- When you connect Cisco switches through an 802.1Q trunk, make sure that the native VLAN for an 802.1Q trunk is the same on both ends of the trunk link. If the native VLAN on one end of the trunk is different from the native VLAN on the other end, spanning-tree loops might result.
- Disabling spanning tree on the native VLAN of an 802.1Q trunk without disabling spanning tree on every VLAN in the network can cause spanning-tree loops. Cisco recommends that you leave spanning tree enabled on the native VLAN of an 802.1Q trunk. If this is not possible, disable spanning tree on every

VLAN in the network. Make sure that your network is free of physical loops before disabling spanning tree.

- When you connect two Cisco switches through 802.1Q trunks, the switches exchange spanning-tree bridge protocol data units (BPDUs) on each VLAN allowed on the trunks. The BPDUs on the native VLAN of the trunk are sent untagged to the reserved IEEE 802.1d spanning-tree multicast MAC address (01-80-C2-00-00-00). The BPDUs on all other VLANs on the trunk are sent tagged to the reserved Shared Spanning Tree Protocol (SSTP) multicast MAC address (01-00-0c-cc-cc-cd).
- The 802.1Q switches that are not Cisco switches maintain only a single instance of spanning-tree (Mono Spanning Tree [MST]) that defines the spanning-tree topology for all VLANs. When you connect a Cisco switch to a switch through an 802.1Q trunk without a Cisco switch, the MST of the switch and the native VLAN spanning tree of the Cisco switch combine to form a single spanning-tree topology known as the Common Spanning Tree (CST).
- Because Cisco switches transmit BPDUs to the SSTP multicast MAC address on VLANs other than the native VLAN of the trunk, switches that are not Cisco switches do not recognize these frames as BPDUs and flood them on all ports in the corresponding VLAN. Other Cisco switches connected to the 802.1Q cloud receive these flooded BPDUs. This condition allows Cisco switches to maintain a per-VLAN spanning-tree topology across a cloud of 802.1Q switches that are not Cisco switches. The 802.1Q cloud of switches separating the Cisco switches is treated as a single broadcast segment among all switches connected to the 802.1Q cloud of switches that are not Cisco switches through 802.1Q trunks.
- Make sure that the native VLAN is the same on *all* of the 802.1Q trunks that connect the Cisco switches to the 802.1Q cloud of switches that are not Cisco switches.
- If you are connecting multiple Cisco switches to a 802.1Q cloud of switches that are not Cisco switches, all of the connections must be through 802.1Q trunks. You cannot connect Cisco switches to an 802.1Q cloud of switches that are not Cisco switches through ISL trunks or through access ports. Doing so will cause the switch to place the ISL trunk port or access port into the spanning-tree “port inconsistent” state and no traffic will pass through the port.

### Cisco 2600 Series, Cisco 3600 Series, and Cisco 3700 Series Routers

The **switchport trunk encapsulation** command is supported only for platforms and interface hardware that can support 802.1Q formats.

The *vlanlist* format is **all** | **none** | **add** | **remove** | **except***vlanlist[,vlanlist...]* where:

- **all** --Specifies all VLANs from 1 to 1005. Beginning with Cisco IOS Release 12.4(15)T, the valid VLAN ID range is from 1 to 4094.
- **none** --Indicates an empty list. This keyword is not supported in the **switchport trunk allowed vlan** form of the command.
- **add** --Adds the defined list of VLANs to those currently set instead of replacing the list.
- **remove** --Removes the defined list of VLANs from those currently set instead of replacing the list.
- **except** --Lists the VLANs that should be calculated by inverting the defined list of VLANs.
- *vlan list*-- Is either a single VLAN number from 1 to 1005 or a continuous range of VLANs described by two VLAN numbers, the lesser one first, separated by a hyphen that represents the VLAN IDs of the allowed VLANs when this port is in trunking mode. Beginning with Cisco IOS Release 12.4(15)T, the valid VLAN ID range is from 1 to 4094.

### Cisco 7600 Series Routers and Catalyst 6500 Series Switches

This command is not supported on GE Layer 2 WAN ports.

You can enter the **switchport trunk** command only on the PO. If you enter the **switchport trunk** command on a port member the following message is displayed:

```
Configuration is not allowed on Port members. Remove the interface from the Port Channel
to modify its config
```

The **switchport trunk encapsulation dot1q** command is supported only for platforms and interface hardware that can support both ISL and 802.1Q formats. Only 802.1Q encapsulation is supported by shared port adapters (SPAs).

If you enter the **switchport trunk encapsulation isl** command on a port channel containing an interface that does not support ISL-trunk encapsulation, the command is rejected.

You can enter the **switchport trunk allowed vlan** command on interfaces where the span destination port is either a trunk or an access port.

You can enter the **switchport trunk native vlan tag** command to enable the tagging of native VLAN traffic on a per-port basis. When tagging is enabled, all the packets on the native VLAN are tagged and all incoming untagged data packets are dropped, but untagged control packets are accepted. When tagging is disabled, the native VLAN packets going out on trunk ports are not tagged and the incoming untagged packets are allowed and assigned to the native VLAN. The **no switchport trunk native vlan tag** command overrides the **vlan dot1q tag native** command for global tagging.




---

**Note** The **switchport trunk native vlan tag** interface configuration mode command does not enable native VLAN tagging unless you first configure the switch to tag native VLAN traffic globally. To enable native VLAN tagging globally, use the **vlan dot1q tag native** command in global configuration mode.

---




---

**Note** The **switchport trunk pruning vlan *vlan-list*** command does not support extended-range VLANs; valid *vlan-list* values are from 1 to 1005.

---

The **dot1q ethertype *value*** keyword and argument are not supported on port-channel interfaces. You can enter the command on the individual port interface only. Also, you can configure the ports in a channel group to have different EtherType configurations.




---

**Caution** Be careful when configuring the custom EtherType value on a port. If you enter the **negotiate** keyword and DISL and Dynamic Trunking Protocol (DTP) negotiation do not resolve the encapsulation format, then ISL is the selected format and may pose as a security risk. The **no** form of this command resets the trunk-encapsulation format to the default.

---

- The **no** form of the **switchport trunk native vlan** command resets the native mode VLAN to the appropriate default VLAN for the device.
- The **no** form of the **switchport trunk native vlan tag** command configures the Layer 2 port not to tag native VLAN traffic.
- The **no** form of the **switchport trunk allowed vlan** command resets the list to the default list, which allows all VLANs.

- The **no** form of the **switchport trunk pruning vlan** command resets the list to the default list, which enables all VLANs for VTP pruning.
- The **no** form of the **switchport trunk encapsulation dot1q** command resets the list to the default value.

The *vlan-list* format is **all | none | add | remove | except** [*vlan-list* [,*vlan-list*...]] where:

- **all** --Specifies all the appropriate VLANs. This keyword is not supported in the **switchport trunk pruning vlan** command.
- **none** --Indicates an empty list. This keyword is not supported in the **switchport trunk allowed vlan** command.
- **add** *vlan-list* , *vlan-list*... ]-- Adds the defined list of VLANs to those currently set instead of replacing the list.
- **remove** *vlan-list* , *vlan-list*... ]-- Removes the defined list of VLANs from those currently set instead of replacing the list. You can remove VLAN 1. If you remove VLAN 1 from a trunk, the trunk interface continues to send and receive management traffic (for example, Cisco Discovery Protocol, version 3; VTP; Port Aggregation Protocol, version 4 (PAgP4); and DTP) in VLAN 1.




---

**Note** You can remove any of the default VLANs (1002 to 1005) from a trunk; this action is not allowed in earlier releases.

---

- **except** *vlan-list* , *vlan-list*... ]--Excludes the specified list of VLANs from those currently set instead of replacing the list.
- *vlan-list* , *vlan-list*... -- Specifies a single VLAN number from 1 to 4094 or a continuous range of VLANs that are described by two VLAN numbers from 1 to 4094. You can specify multiple VLAN numbers or ranges of numbers using a comma-separated list.

To specify a range of VLANs, enter the smaller VLAN number first, separated by a hyphen and the larger VLAN number at the end of the range.

Do not enable the reserved VLAN range (1006 to 1024) on trunks when connecting a Cisco 7600 series router running the Cisco IOS software on both the supervisor engine and the Multilayer Switch Feature Card (MSFC) to a Cisco 7600 series router running the Catalyst operating system. These VLANs are reserved in Cisco 7600 series routers running the Catalyst operating system. If enabled, Cisco 7600 series routers running the Catalyst operating system may disable the ports if a trunking channel is between these systems.

#### Cisco UCS E-Series Server Installed in Cisco 4400 Integrated Services Routers




---

**Note** To set trunk characteristics, the interface must be in trunk mode.

---

The *vlan-list* format is **all | none | add | remove | except | WORD**, where:

- **all**—Specifies all VLANs: 1-2349—VLAN IDs in range 1; and 2450-4095—VLAN IDs in range 2.
- **none**—Indicates an empty list.
- **add**—Adds the defined list of VLANs to those currently set instead of replacing the list.

- **remove**—Removes the defined list of VLANs from those currently set instead of replacing the list.
- **except**—Lists the VLANs that should be calculated by inverting the defined list of VLANs.
- **WORD**—Is either a single VLAN number from 1 to 4095 or a continuous range of VLANs described by two VLAN numbers, the lesser one first, separated by a hyphen that represents the VLAN IDs of the allowed VLANs when this port is in trunking mode.

## Examples

The following example shows how to cause a port interface configured as a switched interface to encapsulate in 802.1Q trunking format regardless of its default trunking format in trunking mode:

```
Router(config-if)# switchport trunk encapsulation dot1q
```

The following example shows how to configure the Layer 2 port to tag native VLAN traffic:

```
Router(config-if)#
switchport trunk native vlan tag
```

## Cisco UCS E-Series Server Installed in Cisco 4400 Integrated Services Routers



**Note** To set trunk characteristics, the interface must be in trunk mode.

The following example shows how to allow trunking on specified VLANs:

```
Router(config)# interface ucse 1/0/0
Router(config-if)# switchport mode trunk
Router(config-if)# switchport trunk allowed vlan 1-2,40,60,1002-1005
```

## Related Commands

| Command                           | Description                                                                      |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>show interfaces switchport</b> | Displays administrative and operational status of a switching (nonrouting) port. |
| <b>vlan dot1q tag native</b>      | Enables dot1q tagging for all VLANs in a trunk.                                  |



## INDEX

- A**
- accessing [153](#)
- B**
- basic workflow [7, 9–10, 13](#)
    - installing the E-Series Server or NCE into router [13](#)
    - option 1 [7](#)
    - option 2 [9](#)
    - option 3 [10](#)
  - BIOS [100, 139, 149, 151–152](#)
    - firmware [151–152](#)
      - installing from TFTP server [152](#)
      - installing through browser [151](#)
    - obtaining firmware from Cisco [100, 149](#)
    - obtaining firmware from Cisco options [139](#)
  - BIOS firmware [151–152](#)
    - installing from TFTP server [152](#)
    - installing through browser [151](#)
  - BIOS setup [111, 153, 155](#)
  - boot order, configuring [106, 108, 112](#)
    - using Cisco IOS CLI [112](#)
- C**
- changing configuration [155](#)
  - CIMC [21, 100, 139, 149](#)
    - firmware [21](#)
      - updating [21](#)
  - CIMC access [23, 25, 27, 30, 32, 35, 38, 40–41, 44, 48, 51, 54, 57, 60–62, 65, 68, 70](#)
    - configuration options [25, 38, 60](#)
    - EHWIC E-Series NCE configuration options [51](#)
    - NIC interface configuration options [40, 62](#)
    - shared LOM configuration options [27](#)
    - using CIMC Configuration Utility [70](#)
    - using console interface [27, 51](#)
    - using G2 interface [68](#)
    - using G2 or G3 interface [35, 48](#)
    - using internal MGF interface using a non-native VLAN [32](#)
    - using internal MGF VLAN interface [30, 54](#)
    - using management (dedicated) interface [25, 38, 61](#)
    - using NCE's G2 interface [57](#)
  - CIMC CLI [76](#)
  - CIMC GUI [76, 78](#)
  - CIMC overview [75](#)
  - commands [174–177](#)
    - boot [177](#)
    - CIMC access [175](#)
    - erase hard drive [177](#)
    - installation [174](#)
    - ip address configuration [175](#)
    - password reset [175](#)
    - raid [176](#)
    - reload, reset, start, stop, shutdown [176](#)
    - session [175](#)
    - statistics and status [177](#)
    - VLAN [175](#)
  - common terms [11](#)
  - compatibility [14–15](#)
    - verifying [14–15](#)
  - configuring [23](#)
  - configuring boot order [111](#)
- E**
- E-Series Server [5–7, 15, 18](#)
    - installing into the router [15](#)
    - managing [6](#)
    - options [7](#)
    - overview [5](#)
    - verifying, installation [18](#)
  - E-Series Server and Cisco ISR 4000 series interfaces [36](#)
    - understanding [36](#)
  - E-Series Server and ISR G2 interfaces [23](#)
    - understanding [23](#)
  - EVC using native VLAN between the NIM e-series NCE and the Cisco ISR 4000 Series [130](#)
    - creating [130](#)
  - EVC using native VLAN between the server and the Cisco ISR 4000 Series [120](#)
    - creating [120](#)
  - EVC using non-native VLAN between the NIM e-series NCE and the Cisco ISR 4000 Series [131](#)
    - creating [131](#)
  - EVC using non-native VLAN between the server and the Cisco ISR 4000 Series [122](#)
    - creating [122](#)

**F**

firmware [21, 100, 139, 149](#)  
 obtaining from Cisco [100, 149](#)  
 updating [21](#)  
 upgrading [139](#)

**H**

host image [97, 101](#)  
 unmapping [101](#)  
 host image, mapping [97](#)  
 HUU [139, 141](#)  
 available CIMC and BIOS firmware [141](#)  
 overview [139](#)

**I**

installing [105](#)  
 interface [25, 27, 30, 32, 35, 38, 41, 44, 48, 51, 54, 57, 61–62, 65, 68](#)  
 CIMC access using console interface [27, 51](#)  
 CIMC access using E-Series Server's internal GE0 interface and router's ucse *slot/0/0* interface [41](#)  
 CIMC access using E-Series Server's internal GE1 interface and router's ucse *slot/0/1* interface [44](#)  
 CIMC access using G2 or G3 interface [35, 48](#)  
 CIMC access using internal MGF interface using a non-native VLAN [32](#)  
 CIMC access using internal MGF VLAN interface [30, 54](#)  
 CIMC access using management interface [25, 38, 61](#)  
 CIMC access using NCE's GE2 interface [57](#)  
 CIMC access using NIM E-Series NCE's G2 interface [68](#)  
 CIMC access using NIM E-Series NCE's internal GE0 interface and router's ucse *0/subslot/0* interface [62](#)  
 CIMC access using NIM E-Series NCE's internal GE1 interface and router's ucse *0/slot/1* interface [65](#)

**K**

KVM console [94](#)

**L**

Linux [136](#)  
 logging in [76](#)

**M**

mapping [97](#)  
 Microsoft Windows [136](#)  
 Microsoft Windows Server, accessing [113](#)  
 option 2 [113](#)

**N**

NCE [5, 15, 19](#)  
 installing into the router [15](#)  
 overview [5](#)  
 verifying, installation [19](#)  
 NCE and ISR G2 interfaces [50](#)  
 understanding [50](#)  
 network interface mapping [134](#)  
 Network Static Settings [72](#)  
 defining, using a script file [72](#)  
 NIM E-Series NCE [20](#)  
 verifying, installation [20](#)  
 NIM E-Series NCE and Cisco ISR 4000 series interfaces [59](#)  
 understanding [59](#)

**O**

operating system installation [94](#)  
 OS installation [93–94, 96, 105](#)  
 KVM console [94](#)  
 methods [93](#)  
 PXE [96](#)  
 using Cisco IOS CLI [105](#)

**P**

PXE installation [96](#)

**Q**

quick start basic configuration tasks [1](#)

**R**

RAID options [79](#)  
 RAID, configuring [83, 86, 89–90](#)  
 using CIMC GUI [83, 86](#)  
 using Cisco IOS CLI [90](#)  
 using WebBIOS [89](#)  
 reset [21](#)  
 stopping [21](#)  
 router and e-series server [115, 118](#)  
 configuring connection [115, 118](#)  
 router and NCE [124](#)  
 configuring connection [124](#)  
 router and NIM e-series NCE [127](#)  
 configuring connection [127](#)  
 router configuration [157–160](#)  
 differences between Cisco ISR G2 and Cisco ISR 4000 Series [158](#)  
 differences between E-Series Server and EHWIC E-Series NCE [159](#)  
 differences between E-Series Server and NIM E-Series NCE [160](#)  
 differences between SRE-V and E-Series Server [157](#)



**S**

- server management [106, 108](#)
  - configuring the boot order [106, 108](#)
- server software [5](#)
- software [103](#)
  - obtaining from VMware [103](#)

**U**

- using CIMC GUI [106, 108](#)

**V**

- VMware [103](#)
  - obtaining software [103](#)
- VMware vSphere Hypervisor [102–103, 113, 136](#)
  - accessing [113](#)
  - assigning a static IP address [103](#)
  - installation, basic workflow [102](#)
    - option 3 [113](#)
- VMware vSphere Hypervisor configuration [161](#)
  - differences between SRE-V and E-Series Server [161](#)
- vSphere client [105](#)
  - downloading [105](#)

